

The fontspec package

Font selection for X_YLaTeX and LuaLaTeX

WILL ROBERTSON

With contributions by Khaled Hosny,
Philipp Gesang, Joseph Wright, and others.

<http://wspr.io/fontspec/>

2019/01/10 v2.6j

Contents

I	fontspec.dtx	6
1	Package declaration	6
1.1	Lua header	7
II	fontspec-code-load.dtx	8
1	The fontspec.sty loading file	8
III	fontspec-code-vars.dtx	9
1	Declaration of variables	9
IV	fontspec-code-msg.dtx	14
1	Error/warning/info messages	14
1.1	Errors	14
1.2	Warnings	15
1.3	Info messages	17
V	fontspec-code-opening.dtx	19
1	Opening code	19
1.1	Package options	19
1.2	Encodings	19

1.3	Generic functions	20
1.4	expl3 variants	21
VI	fontspec-code-fontload.dtx	22
1	expl3 interface for primitive font loading	22
VII	fontspec-code-interfaces.dtx	24
1	User commands	24
VIII	fontspec-code-user.dtx	27
1	User command internals	27
1.1	Font selection	27
1.2	Font feature selection	30
1.3	Defining new font features	32
IX	fontspec-code-api.dtx	35
1	Programmer's interface	35
X	fontspec-code-internal.dtx	41
1	Internals	41
1.1	The main function for setting fonts	41
1.2	Setting font shapes in a family	49
1.3	Initialisation	58
1.4	Miscellaneous	59
XI	fontspec-code-opentype.dtx	61
1	OpenType definitions code	61
1.1	Adding features when loading fonts	62
1.2	OpenType feature information	66
XII	fontspec-code-graphite.dtx	69
1	Graphite/AAT code	69
XIII	fontspec-code-keyval.dtx	71
1	Font loading (keyval) definitions	71

1.1	Pre-pre-parsing stages	71
1.2	Pre-parsed features	73
1.3	Font faces	73
1.4	General font-independent features	76
XIV fontspec-code-feat-opentype.dtx		86
1	OpenType feature definitions	86
2	Regular key=val / tag definitions	86
2.1	Ligatures	86
2.2	Letters	86
2.3	Numbers	87
2.4	Vertical position	87
2.5	Contextuals	87
2.6	Diacritics	88
2.7	Kerning	88
2.8	Fractions	88
2.9	Style	89
2.10	CJK shape	89
2.11	Character width	90
2.12	Vertical	90
3	OpenType features that need numbering	90
3.1	Alternate	90
3.2	Variant / StylisticSet	91
3.3	CharacterVariant	91
3.4	Annotation	92
3.5	Ornament	92
4	Script and Language	92
4.1	Script	92
4.2	Language	93
5	Backwards compatibility	94
XV fontspec-code-scripts.dtx		95
1	Font script definitions	95
XVI fontspec-code-lang.dtx		98
1	Font language definitions	98

XVII	fontspec-code-feat-aat.dtx	106
1	AAT feature definitions	106
1.1	Ligatures	106
1.2	Letters	106
1.3	Numbers	107
1.4	Contextuals	107
1.5	Diacritics	107
1.6	Vertical position	107
1.7	Fractions	107
1.8	Alternate	107
1.9	Variant / StylisticSet	108
1.10	Style	108
1.11	CJK shape	108
1.12	Character width	109
1.13	Annotation	109
XVIII	fontspec-code-enc.dtx	110
1	Extended font encodings	110
XIX	fontspec-code-math.dtx	113
1	Selecting maths fonts	113
XX	fontspec-code-closing.dtx	118
1	Closing code	118
1.1	Finishing up	118
XXI	fontspec-code-xfss.dtx	119
1	Changes to the NFSS	119
1.1	Italic small caps and so on	119
1.2	Emphasis	120
1.3	Strong emphasis	122
XXII	fontspec-code-patches.dtx	124
1	Patching code	124
1.1	\-	124
1.2	Verbatims	124
1.3	\oldstylenums	126

File I

fontspec.dtx

1 Package declaration

List all dtx files for running the ins file and typesetting the code.

```
1 <*dtx>
2 \gdef\FONTSPECDTX{
3   \DTX{fontspec.dtx}
4   \DTX{fontspec-code-load.dtx}
5   \DTX{fontspec-code-vars.dtx}
6   \DTX{fontspec-code-msg.dtx}
7   \DTX{fontspec-code-opening.dtx}
8   \DTX{fontspec-code-fontload.dtx}
9   \DTX{fontspec-code-interfaces.dtx}
10  \DTX{fontspec-code-user.dtx}
11  \DTX{fontspec-code-api.dtx}
12  \DTX{fontspec-code-internal.dtx}
13  \DTX{fontspec-code-opentype.dtx}
14  \DTX{fontspec-code-graphite.dtx}
15  \DTX{fontspec-code-keyval.dtx}
16  \DTX{fontspec-code-feat-opentype.dtx}
17  \DTX{fontspec-code-scripts.dtx}
18  \DTX{fontspec-code-lang.dtx}
19  \DTX{fontspec-code-feat-aat.dtx}
20  \DTX{fontspec-code-enc.dtx}
21  \DTX{fontspec-code-math.dtx}
22  \DTX{fontspec-code-closing.dtx}
23  \DTX{fontspec-code-xfss.dtx}
24  \DTX{fontspec-code-patches.dtx}
25 }
26 </dtx>
```

Now exit if we're using plain T_EX; this would usually be the case when loading this file with fontspec.ins.

```
27 <*dtx>
28 \def\tmpa{plain}
29 \ifx\tmpa\fmtname\expandafter\endinput\fi
30 </dtx>
```

Metadata for documentation; the official title and authors of the package.

```
31 <*dtx>
32 \title{
33   The \textsf{fontspec} package\\
34   Font selection for \XeLaTeX\ and \LuaLaTeX
35 }
36 \author{
37   \textsc{Will Robertson}\\
38   With contributions by Khaled Hosny,\\
39   Philipp Gesang, Joseph Wright, and others.\\
```

```

40 \url{http://wspr.io/fontspec/}
41 }
42 </dtx>

```

Declare the package version and date for each of the .sty files generated. In addition, declare the version and date for this .dtx file.

```

43 <fontspec>\RequirePackage{xparse}
44 <fontspec & load>\ProvidesExplPackage{fontspec}%
45 <fontspec & XE>\ProvidesExplPackage{fontspec-xetex}%
46 <fontspec & LU>\ProvidesExplPackage{fontspec-luatex}%
47 <*dtx>
48 \RequirePackage{xparse}
49 \ProvidesExplFile{fontspec.dtx}
50 </dtx>
51 <*fontspec>
52 {2019/01/10}{2.6j}{Font selection for XeLaTeX and LuaLaTeX}
53 </fontspec>

```

Here the version and date are setup for typesetting the documentation.

```

54 <*dtx>
55 \GetFileInfo{fontspec.dtx}
56 \date{\filedate \quad \fileversion}
57 </dtx>

```

1.1 Lua header

```

58 <lua>fontspec = fontspec or {}
59 <lua>local fontspec = fontspec
60 <lua>fontspec.module = {
61 <lua>    name = "fontspec",
62 <lua>    version = "2.6j",
63 <lua>    date = "2019/01/10",
64 <lua>    description = "Font selection for XeLaTeX and LuaLaTeX",
65 <lua>    author = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang, Will Robertson",
66 <lua>    copyright = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang, Will Robertson",
67 <lua>    license = "LPPL v1.3c"
68 <lua>}

```

File II

fontspec-code-load.dtx

1 The fontspec.sty loading file

Before we begin, for the rest of the package we use the `@@ expl3` module syntax with module name 'fontspec'.

```
1 <@@=fontspec>
```

The fontspec.sty file is simply set up to load the appropriate fontspec-xetex.sty or fontspec-luatex.sty file. This is performed by the following code.

```
2 <*/load>
```

Lua[®]TeX

```
3 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
4 {
5   \RequirePackage{luaotfload}
6   \directlua{require("fontspec")}
7   \RequirePackageWithOptions{fontspec-luatex}
8   \endinput
9 }
```

X_ƎTeX

```
10 \sys_if_engine_xetex:T
11 {
12   \RequirePackageWithOptions{fontspec-xetex}
13   \endinput
14 }
```

Other If not one of the above, error and exit.

```
15 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
16 {
17   The~ fontspec~ package~ requires~ either~ XeTeX~ or~ LuaTeX.\\\
18   You~ must~ change~ your~ typesetting~ engine~ to,~ e.g.,~
19   "xelatex"~ or~ "lualatex" instead~ of~ "latex"~ or~ "pdflatex".
20 }
21 \msg_fatal:nn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
```

Closing That's the end of the fontspec.sty file.

```
22 \endinput
23 </load>
```


File III

fontspec-code-vars.dtx

1 Declaration of variables

This file consists solely of declaration of variables used by fontspec. In some cases these variables are also initialised with default values. In time I would like to move these initialisations

Booleans

`\l_@@_firsttime_bool` As `\keys_set:nn` is run multiple times, some of its information storing only occurs once while we decide if the font family has been defined or not. When the later processing is occurring per-shape this no longer needs to happen; this is indicated by the ‘firsttime’ conditional.

```
1 \bool_new:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
```

(End definition for \l_@@_firsttime_bool. This function is documented on page ??.)

```
2 \bool_new:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
3 \bool_new:N \l_@@_noit_bool
4 \bool_new:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
5 \bool_new:N \l_@@_check_bool

6 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
7 \bool_new:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
8 \bool_new:N \l_@@_ot_bool
9 \bool_new:N \l_@@_mm_bool
10 \bool_new:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
11 \bool_new:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
12 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
```

For dealing with legacy maths:

```
13 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool
14 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
15 \bool_new:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
```

For package options:

```
16 \bool_new:N \g_@@_cfg_bool
17 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_bool
18 \bool_new:N \g_@@_euenc_bool

19 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool
20 \bool_new:N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
21 \bool_new:N \l_@@_alias_bool
22 \bool_new:N \l_@@_external_bool
23 \bool_new:N \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
24 \bool_new:N \l_@@_script_exist_bool
25 \bool_new:N \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
26 \bool_new:N \l_@@_proceed_bool
27 \bool_new:N \l_@@_check_feat_bool
```

`\l_@@_never_check_bool` This boolean is overloaded. It is used to disable checking opentype script, language, and tags for two purposes: when a font has no opentype features, we just turn it true (i.e., disable checking); and, when running checking code that has a user-defined return path we want to allow the higher-level code to dictate the logic. TODO: tidy this up!

```
28 \bool_new:N \l_@@_never_check_bool
```

(End definition for `\l_@@_never_check_bool`. This function is documented on page ??.)

Counters

```
29 \int_new:N \l_@@_script_int
30 \int_new:N \l_@@_language_int
31 \int_new:N \l_@@_strnum_int
32 \int_new:N \l_@@_tmp_int
33 \int_new:N \l_@@_em_int
34 \int_new:N \l_@@_emdef_int
35 \int_new:N \l_@@_strong_int
36 \int_new:N \l_@@_strongdef_int
```

Floats

```
37 \fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_fp
38 \fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_fp
```

Dimensions

```
39 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_dim
40 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_dim
41 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpc_dim
```

Sequences

```
42 \seq_new:N \l_@@_bf_series_seq
```

Comma-lists

```
43 \clist_new:N \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist
44 \clist_new:N \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
45 \clist_new:N \l_@@_sizefeat_clist
46 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}}
47 \clist_new:N \l_@@_extensions_clist
48 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist
49 \clist_new:N \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist
50 \clist_new:N \l_@@_all_features_clist
51 \clist_new:N \l_@@_leftover_clist
52 \clist_new:N \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
53 \clist_new:N \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist
54 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
55 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist
56 \clist_new:N \l_@@_arg_clist
57 \clist_new:N \l_@@_this_feat_clist
```

```

58 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
59 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
60 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
61 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
62 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
63 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
64 \clist_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist

```

Property lists

```

65 \prop_new:N \g_@@_fontopts_prop
66 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfss_prop
67 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfssfont_prop
68 \prop_new:N \g_@@_OT_features_prop
69 \prop_new:N \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop
70 \prop_new:N \g_@@_em_prop
71 \prop_new:N \g_@@_strong_prop
72 \prop_new:N \g_@@_fontid_family_prop
73 \prop_new:N \g_@@_family_int_prop

```

Token lists

```

74 \tl_new:N \l_fontspec_family_tl
75 \tl_new:N \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
76 \tl_new:N \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
77 \tl_new:N \l_fontspec_fontname_tl

78 \tl_clear_new:N \UTFencname
79 \tl_clear_new:N \cyrillicencoding
80 \tl_clear_new:N \latinencoding

81 \tl_new:N \l_fontspec_mode_tl
82 \tl_new:N \g_@@_curr_series_tl
83 \tl_new:N \g_@@_defined_shapes_tl
84 \tl_new:N \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl
85 \tl_new:N \g_@@_nfss_family_tl
86 \tl_new:N \g_@@_single_feat_tl
87 \tl_new:N \l_@@_basename_tl
88 \tl_new:N \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl
89 \tl_new:N \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
90 \tl_new:N \l_@@_ext_filename_tl
91 \tl_new:N \l_@@_extension_tl
92 \tl_new:N \l_@@_font_path_tl
93 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontid_tl
94 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_tl
95 \tl_new:N \l_@@_hexcol_tl
96 \tl_new:N \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
97 \tl_new:N \l_@@_nfss_tl
98 \tl_new:N \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
99 \tl_new:N \l_@@_opacity_tl
100 \tl_new:N \l_@@_optical_size_tl
101 \tl_new:N \l_@@_options_tl
102 \tl_new:N \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl
103 \tl_new:N \l_@@_scale_tl

```

```

104 \tl_new:N \l_@@_size_tl
105 \tl_new:N \l_@@_sizedfont_tl
106 \tl_new:N \l_@@_this_font_tl
107 \tl_new:N \l_@@_tmp_tl
108 \tl_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_tl
109 \tl_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_tl
110 \tl_new:N \l_@@_ttc_index_tl
111 \tl_new:N \l_@@_emshape_query_tl
112 \tl_new:N \l_@@_em_switch_tl
113 \tl_new:N \l_@@_em_tmp_tl
114 \tl_new:N \l_@@_strong_tmp_tl
115 \tl_new:N \l_@@_strong_switch_tl
116 \tl_new:N \l_@@_hyphenchar_tl
117 \tl_new:N \l_@@_smcp_shape_tl

118 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathrm_tl
119 \tl_new:N \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
120 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathsf_tl
121 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathtt_tl

    Defaults:

122 \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {\rmdefault}
123 \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {\sfdefault}
124 \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {\ttdefault}

125 \tl_new:N \l_@@_family_label_tl
126 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fake_slant_tl
127 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fake_embolden_tl

128 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_up_tl
129 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl
130 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_it_tl
131 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl
132 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl
133 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl
134 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl

135 \tl_new:N \l_@@_script_name_tl
136 \tl_new:N \l_fontspeg_script_tl
137 \tl_new:N \l_@@_lang_name_tl
138 \tl_new:N \l_fontspeg_lang_tl

139 \tl_new:N \l_@@_mapping_tl
140 \tl_new:N \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
141 \tl_new:N \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
142 \tl_new:N \l_@@_postadjust_tl

143 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_hexcol_tl {000000}
144 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_opacity_tl {FF~}
145 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_postadjust_tl { \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl }

```

Semi-colon-lists Not a real data structure but sensible to name accordingly.

```

146 \tl_new:N \g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
147 \tl_new:N \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist

```

Font families Again not a real data structure, and also probably poorly named.

```
148 \tl_new:N \l_@@_rmfamily_family_tl  
149 \tl_new:N \l_@@_sffamily_family_tl  
150 \tl_new:N \l_@@_ttfamily_family_tl
```

File IV

fontspec-code-msg.dtx

1 Error/warning/info messages

Shorthands for messages:

```
1 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:n { \msg_error:nn {fontspec} }
2 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:nn { \msg_error:nnn {fontspec} }
3 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:nx { \msg_error:nnx {fontspec} }
4 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn {fontspec} }
5 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:nx { \msg_warning:nnx {fontspec} }
6 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:nxx { \msg_warning:nnxx {fontspec} }
7 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:n { \msg_info:nn {fontspec} }
8 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:nx { \msg_info:nnx {fontspec} }
9 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:nxx { \msg_info:nnxx {fontspec} }
10 \cs_new:Npn \@@_trace:n { \msg_trace:nn {fontspec} }
```

Allow messages to be written with spaces acting as normal:

```
11 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \msg_new:nnn {nnx}
12 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \msg_new:nnnn {nnxx}
13 \cs_new:Nn \@@_msg_new:nnn
14 { \msg_new:nnx {#1} {#2} { \tl_trim_spaces:n {#3} } }
15 \cs_new:Nn \@@_msg_new:nnnn
16 { \msg_new:nnxx {#1} {#2} { \tl_trim_spaces:n {#3} } { \tl_trim_spaces:n {#4} } }
17 \char_set_catcode_space:n {32}
```

1.1 Errors

```
18 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-inside-encdef}
19 {
20   \exp_not:N#1can only be used in the second argument
21   to \string\DeclareUnicodeEncoding.
22 }
23 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-size-info}
24 {
25   Size information must be supplied.\\
26   For example, SizeFeatures={Size={8-12},...}.
27 }
28 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {font-not-found}
29 {
30   The font "#1" cannot be found.
31 }
32 {
33   A font might not be found for many reasons.\\
34   Check the spelling, where the font is installed etc. etc.\\
35   When in doubt, ask someone for help!
36 }
37 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {rename-feature-not-exist}
38 {
```

```

39   The feature #1 doesn't appear to be defined.
40 }
41 {
42   It looks like you're trying to rename a feature that doesn't exist.
43 }
44 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-glyph}
45 {
46   '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain glyph #1.
47 }
48 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {euler-too-late}
49 {
50   The euler package must be loaded BEFORE fontspec.
51 }
52 {
53   fontspec only overwrites euler's attempt to
54   define the maths text fonts if fontspec is
55   loaded after euler. Type <return> to proceed
56   with incorrect \string\mathit, \string\mathbf, etc.
57 }
58 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {no-xcolor}
59 {
60   Cannot load named colours without the xcolor package.
61 }
62 {
63   Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Instead of loading
64   the color package, use xcolor instead.
65 }
66 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-color-model}
67 {
68   Error loading colour `#1'; unknown colour model.
69 }
70 {
71   Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Please report this error
72   to my developer with a minimal example that causes the problem.
73 }
74 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {not-in-addfontfeatures}
75 {
76   The "#1" font feature cannot be used in \string\addfontfeatures.
77 }
78 {
79   This is due to how TeX loads fonts; such settings
80   are global so adding them mid-document within a group causes
81   confusion. You'll need to define multiple font families to achieve
82   what you want.
83 }

```

1.2 Warnings

```

84 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {tu-clash}
85 {
86   I have found the tuenc.def encoding definition file but the TU encoding is not
87   defined by the LaTeX2e kernel; attempting to correct but you really should update

```

```

88   to the latest version of LaTeX2e.
89   }
90   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {tu-missing}
91   {
92     The TU encoding seems to be missing; please update to the latest version of LaTeX2e.
93   }
94   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {addfontfeatures-ignored}
95   {
96     \string\addfontfeature (s) ignored \msg_line_context;
97     it cannot be used with a font that wasn't selected by a fontspec command.\\
98     \\
99     The current font is "\use:c{font@name}".\\
100    \int_compare:nTF { \clist_count:n {#1} = 1 }
101      { The requested feature is "#1". }
102      { The requested features are "#1". }
103    }
104    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {feature-option-overwrite}
105    {
106      Option '#2' of font feature '#1' overwritten.
107    }
108    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {ot-tag-too-long}
109    {
110      OpenType tag '#1' is too long; script, language, and feature tags must be four characters o
111    }
112    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist-latn}
113    {
114      Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.\\
115      'Latin' script used instead.
116    }
117    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist}
118    {
119      Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.
120    }
121    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist}
122    {
123      '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
124      for AAT font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
125    }
126    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font}
127    {
128      AAT feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
129      in font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
130    }
131    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist}
132    {
133      '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
134      for OpenType font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
135    }
136    \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font}
137    {
138      OpenType feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available

```



```

139   for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
140   with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl' and language '\l_@@_lang_name_tl'.
141   }
142   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-opticals}
143   {
144     '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' doesn't appear to have an Optical Size axis.
145   }
146   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {language-not-exist}
147   {
148     Language '#1' not available
149     for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
150     with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl'.\\
151     'Default' language used instead.
152   }
153   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-xetex-feature}
154   {
155     Ignored XeTeX only feature: '#1'.
156   }
157   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-luatex-feature}
158   {
159     Ignored LuaTeX only feature: '#1'.
160   }
161   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping}
162   {
163     Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.
164   }
165   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtext}
166   {
167     Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.\\
168     Use "Ligatures=TeX" instead of "Mapping=tex-text".
169   }
170   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cm-default-obsolete}
171   {
172     The "cm-default" package option is obsolete.
173   }
174   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {fakebold-only-xetex}
175   {
176     The "FakeBold" and "AutoFakeBold" options are only available with XeLaTeX.\\
177     Option ignored.
178   }
179   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {font-index-needs-ttc}
180   {
181     The "FontIndex" feature is only supported by TTC (TrueType Collection) fonts.\\
182     Feature ignored.
183   }
184   \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {feat-cannot-remove}
185   {
186     The "#1" feature cannot be deactivated. Request ignored.
187   }

```

1.3 Info messages

```

188 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {defining-font}
189 {
190   Font family '\g_@@_nfss_family_tl' created for font '#2'
191   with options [\l_@@_all_features_clist].\\
192   \\
193   This font family consists of the following NFSS series/shapes:\\
194   \g_@@_defined_shapes_tl
195 }
196 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-font-shape}
197 {
198   Could not resolve font "#1" (it probably doesn't exist).
199 }
200 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {set-scale}
201 {
202   \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space scale = \l_@@_scale_tl.
203 }
204 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {setup-math}
205 {
206   Adjusting the maths setup (use [no-math] to avoid this).
207 }
208 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-scripts}
209 {
210   Font "\l_fontspec_fontname_tl" does not contain any OpenType `Script' information.
211 }
212 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice}
213 {
214   Opacity set twice, in both Colour and Opacity.\\
215   Using specification "Opacity=#1".
216 }
217 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice-col}
218 {
219   Opacity set twice, in both Opacity and Colour.\\
220   Using an opacity specification in hex of "#1/FF".
221 }
222 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {bad-colour}
223 {
224   Bad colour declaration "#1".
225   Colour must be one of:\\
226   * a named xcolor colour\\
227   * a six-digit hex colour RRGGBB\\
228   * an eight-digit hex colour RRGGBBTT with opacity
229 }

Reset 'space' behaviour:
230 \char_set_catcode_ignore:n {32}

```

File V

fontspec-code-opening.dtx

1 Opening code

1.1 Package options

```
1 \DeclareOption{cm-default}
2 {
3   \@@_warning:n {cm-default-obsolete}
4 }
5
6 \DeclareOption {math}      { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_math_bool }
7 \DeclareOption {no-math}   { \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool }
8 \DeclareOption {config}    { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_cfg_bool }
9 \DeclareOption {no-config}{ \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_cfg_bool }
10 \DeclareOption {euenc}     { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_euenc_bool }
11 \DeclareOption {tuenc}     { \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_euenc_bool }
12
13 \DeclareOption {quiet}
14 {
15   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { info }
16   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
17 }
18
19 \DeclareOption{silent}
20 {
21   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { none }
22   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
23 }
24
25 \ExecuteOptions{config,math,tuenc}
26 \ProcessOptions*
```

1.2 Encodings

Soon to be the default, with a just-in-case check:

```
23 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_euenc_bool
24 {
25   \file_if_exist:nTF {tuenc.def}
26   {
27     \cs_if_exist:cF {T@TU}
28     {
29       \@@_warning:n {tu-clash}
30       \DeclareFontEncoding{TU}{}{}
31       \DeclareFontSubstitution{TU}{lmr}{m}{n}
32     }
33   }
34   {
35     \@@_warning:n {tu-missing}
36     \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_euenc_bool
37   }
38 }
```

```

39 \bool_if:NTF \g_@@_euenc_bool
40 {
41   <XE> \tl_gset:Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU1}
42   <LU> \tl_gset:Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU2}
43 }
44 { \tl_gset:Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl { TU } }
45 \tl_set:Nn \rmdefault {lmr}
46 \tl_set:Nn \sfdefault {lmss}
47 \tl_set:Nn \ttdefault {lmtt}
48 \RequirePackage[\g_fontspec_encoding_tl]{fontenc}
49 \tl_set_eq:NN \UTFencname \g_fontspec_encoding_tl % for xunicode if needed

```

To overcome the encoding changing the current font size, but only if a class has been loaded first:

```

50 \tl_if_in:NnT \@filelist {.cls} { \normalsize }

```

Dealing with a couple of the problems introduced by babel:

```

51 \tl_set_eq:NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
52 \tl_set_eq:NN \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
53 \AtBeginDocument
54 {
55   \tl_set_eq:NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
56   \tl_set_eq:NN \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
57 }

```

That latin encoding definition is repeated to suppress font warnings. Something to do with `\select@language` ending up in the .aux file which is read at the beginning of the document.

```

58 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_euenc_bool
59 {
60   <LU> \cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_tmp: \XeTeXpicfile
61   <LU> \cs_set:Npn \XeTeXpicfile {}
62   \RequirePackage{xunicode}
63   <LU> \cs_set_eq:NN \XeTeXpicfile \fontspec_tmp:
64 }

```

1.3 Generic functions

```

\FontspecSetCheckBoolTrue
\FontspecSetCheckBoolFalse

```

These strange set functions are to simplify returning code from LuaTeX:

```

65 \cs_new:Npn \FontspecSetCheckBoolTrue { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_check_bool }
66 \cs_new:Npn \FontspecSetCheckBoolFalse { \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_check_bool }

```

(End definition for `\FontspecSetCheckBoolTrue` and `\FontspecSetCheckBoolFalse`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

```

\@@_keys_set_known:nnN

```

```

67 \cs_new:Nn \@@_keys_set_known:nnN
68 {
69   <debug> \typeout{::: Keys~set::~~{#1}~{#2} }
70   \keys_set_known:nnN {#1} {#2} #3
71   <debug> \typeout{::: Leftover::~~{#3} }
72 }
73 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_keys_set_known:nnN {nx}

```

(End definition for \@@_keys_set_known:nnN. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn Missing in expl3, IMO.

```

74 \cs_new:Nn \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn
75 {
76   \int_set:Nn #1 { \__dim_eval:w #2 #1 \__dim_eval_end: }
77 }

```

(End definition for \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

1.4 expl3 variants

```

78 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_set:Nn {Nv}
79 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set:nn {nx}
80 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_known:nnN {nx}
81 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nxx}
82 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {NxV}
83 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput_if_new:Nnn {NxV}
84 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {NxN}
85 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_get:NnNT {NxN}
86 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_get:NnNTF {NxN}
87 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_if_eq:nnTF {nv}
88 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nTF {x}
89 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nF {x}
90 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nF {f}
91 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_eq:nnT {ox}
92 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_replace_all:Nnn {Nnx}

```

File VI

fontspec-code-fontload.dtx

1 expl3 interface for primitive font loading

```
\@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn
\@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn
1 \cs_set:Npn \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn #1#2#3
2 {
3   \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop:
4 }
5 \cs_set:Npn \@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
6 {
7   \global \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop:
8 }
```

(End definition for \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn and \@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn. These functions are documented on page ??.)

```
\@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
9 \cs_set:Npn \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
10 {
11   \int_set:Nn \suppressfontnotfounderror {1}
12 }
```

(End definition for \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:. This function is documented on page ??.)

```
\@@_primitive_font_if_null_p:N
\@@_primitive_font_if_null:NTF
13 \prg_set_conditional:Nnn \@@_primitive_font_if_null:N {p,TF,T,F}
14 {
15   \ifx #1 \nullfont
16     \prg_return_true:
17   \else
18     \prg_return_false:
19   \fi
20 }
```

(End definition for \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

```
\@@_primitive_font_if_exist:nTF
21 \prg_set_conditional:Nnn \@@_primitive_font_if_exist:n {TF,T,F}
22 {
23   \group_begin:
24     \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
25     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_@@_primitive_font {#1} {10pt}
26     \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NTF \l_@@_primitive_font
27     { \group_end: \prg_return_false: }
28     { \group_end: \prg_return_true: }
29 }
```

(End definition for \@@_primitive_font_if_exist:nTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF`

```
30 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:Nn {p,TF,T,F}  
31 {  
32   \tex_iffontchar:D #1 #2 \scan_stop:  
33   \prg_return_true:  
34   \else:  
35   \prg_return_false:  
36   \fi:  
37 }
```

(End definition for \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn`

```
38 \cs_new:Nn \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn  
39 {  
40   \tex_hyphenchar:D #1 = #2 \scan_stop:  
41 }
```

(End definition for \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

File VII

fontspec-code-interfaces.dtx

1 User commands

This section contains the definitions of the commands detailed in the user documentation. Only the ‘top level’ definitions of the commands are contained herein; they all use or define macros which are defined or used later on in [Section 1 on page 27](#).

```
1 \NewDocumentCommand \fontspec { 0{} m 0{} }
2 {
3   \@@_main_fontspec:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
4   \ignorespaces
5 }
6 \NewDocumentCommand \setmainfont { 0{} m 0{} }
7 {
8   \@@_main_setmainfont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
9   \ignorespaces
10 }
11 \NewDocumentCommand \setsansfont { 0{} m 0{} }
12 {
13   \@@_main_setsansfont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
14   \ignorespaces
15 }
16 \NewDocumentCommand \setmonofont { 0{} m 0{} }
17 {
18   \@@_main_setmonofont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
19   \ignorespaces
20 }
21 \NewDocumentCommand \setmathrm { 0{} m 0{} }
22 {
23   \@@_main_setmathrm:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
24 }
25 \NewDocumentCommand \setboldmathrm { 0{} m 0{} }
26 {
27   \@@_main_setboldmathrm:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
28 }
29 \NewDocumentCommand \setmathsf { 0{} m 0{} }
30 {
31   \@@_main_setmathsf:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
32 }
33 \NewDocumentCommand \setmathtt { 0{} m 0{} }
34 {
35   \@@_main_setmathtt:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
36 }
```


`\setromanfont` This is the old name for `\setmainfont`, retained *ad infinitum* for backwards compatibility. It was deprecated in 2010.

```

37 \NewDocumentCommand \setromanfont { O{} m O{} }
38 {
39     \@@_main_setmainfont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
40 }

```

(End definition for `\setromanfont`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

41 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontfamily { m O{} m O{} }
42 {
43     \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnnN {#1} {#2,#4} {#3} \NewDocumentCommand
44 }
45 \NewDocumentCommand \renewfontfamily { m O{} m O{} }
46 {
47     \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnnN {#1} {#2,#4} {#3} \RenewDocumentCommand
48 }
49 \NewDocumentCommand \setfontfamily { m O{} m O{} }
50 {
51     \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnnN {#1} {#2,#4} {#3} \DeclareDocumentCommand
52 }
53 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontface { m O{} m O{} }
54 {
55     \@@_main_newfontface:nnn {#1} {#2,#4} {#3}
56 }

```

`\defaultfontfeatures` This macro takes one argument that consists of all of feature options that will be applied by default to all subsequent `\fontspec` commands.

```

57 \NewDocumentCommand \defaultfontfeatures { t+ o m }
58 {
59     \IfNoValueTF {#2}
60     { \@@_set_default_features:nn {#1} {#3} }
61     { \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3} }
62     \ignorespaces
63 }

```

(End definition for `\defaultfontfeatures`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

64 \NewDocumentCommand \addfontfeatures {m}
65 {
66     \@@_main_addfontfeatures:n {#1}
67 }
68 \NewDocumentCommand \addfontfeature {m}
69 {
70     \@@_main_addfontfeatures:n {#1}
71 }
72 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontfeature {mm}
73 {
74     \@@_main_newfontfeature:nn {#1} {#2}
75 }

```

```

76 \NewDocumentCommand \newAATfeature {mmm}
77 {
78   \@@_main_newAATfeature:nnnn {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4}
79 }
80 \NewDocumentCommand \newopentypefeature {mmm}
81 {
82   \@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
83 }

```

`\newICUfeature` Deprecated.

```

84 \NewDocumentCommand \newICUfeature {mmm}
85 {
86   \@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
87 }
(End definition for \newICUfeature. This function is documented on page ??.)
88 \NewDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeature {mm}
89 {
90   \@@_main_aliasfontfeature:nn {#1} {#2}
91 }
92 \NewDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeatureoption {mmm}
93 {
94   \@@_main_aliasfontfeatureoption:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
95 }

```

`\newfontscript` Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType ‘scripts’, mapping logical names to OpenType script tags.

```

96 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontscript {mm}
97 {
98   \fontspec_new_script:nn {#1} {#2}
99 }

```

(End definition for `\newfontscript`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\newfontlanguage` Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType ‘languages’, mapping logical names to OpenType language tags.

```

100 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontlanguage {mm}
101 {
102   \fontspec_new_lang:nn {#1} {#2}
103 }

```

(End definition for `\newfontlanguage`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

104 \NewDocumentCommand \DeclareFontExtensions {m}
105 {
106   \@@_main_DeclareFontExtensions:n {#1}
107 }
108 \NewDocumentCommand \IfFontFeatureActiveTF {mmm}
109 {
110   \@@_main_IfFontFeatureActiveTF:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
111 }

```

File VIII

fontspec-code-user.dtx

1 User command internals

1.1 Font selection

`\@@_main_fontspec:nn` This is the main command of the package that selects fonts with various features. It takes two arguments: the font name and the optional requested features of that font.

```
1 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_fontspec:nn
2 {
3   \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \f@family {#1} {#2}
4   \fontencoding { \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
5   \selectfont
6 }
```

(End definition for \@@_main_fontspec:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setmainfont` The following three macros perform equivalent operations setting the default font for a particular family: ‘roman’, sans serif, or typewriter (monospaced).

They end with `\normalfont` so that if they’re used in the document, the change registers immediately.

```
7 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setmainfont:nn
8 {
9   \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \l_@@_rmfamily_family_tl {#1} {#2}
10  \tl_set_eq:NN \rmdefault \l_@@_rmfamily_family_tl
11  \use:x
12  {
13    \exp_not:n { \DeclareRobustCommand \rmfamily }
14    {
15      \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
16      \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \l_@@_rmfamily_family_tl }
17      \exp_not:N \selectfont
18    }
19  }
20  \str_if_eq:eeT {\familydefault} {\rmdefault}
21  { \tl_set_eq:NN \encodingdefault \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
22  \@@_setmainfont_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
23  \normalfont
24 }
```

(End definition for \setmainfont. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setsansfont` Same as above.

```
25 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setsansfont:nn
26 {
27   \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \l_@@_sffamily_family_tl {#1} {#2}
28   \tl_set_eq:NN \sfdefault \l_@@_sffamily_family_tl
29   \use:x
30   {
```

```

31     \exp_not:n { \DeclareRobustCommand \sffamily }
32     {
33         \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
34         \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \l_@@_sffamily_family_tl }
35         \exp_not:N \selectfont
36     }
37 }
38 \str_if_eq:eeT {\familydefault} {\sfdefault}
39 { \tl_set_eq:NN \encodingdefault \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
40 \@@_setsansfont_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
41 \normalfont
42 }

```

(End definition for `\setsansfont`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setmonofont` Same as above.

```

43 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setmonofont:nn
44 {
45     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \l_@@_ttfamily_family_tl {#1} {#2}
46     \tl_set_eq:NN \ttdefault \l_@@_ttfamily_family_tl
47     \use:x
48     {
49         \exp_not:n { \DeclareRobustCommand \ttfamily }
50         {
51             \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
52             \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \l_@@_ttfamily_family_tl }
53             \exp_not:N \selectfont
54         }
55     }
56     \str_if_eq:eeT {\familydefault} {\ttdefault}
57     { \tl_set_eq:NN \encodingdefault \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
58     \@@_setmonofont_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
59     \normalfont
60 }

```

(End definition for `\setmonofont`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setmathrm` These commands are analogous to `\setmainfont` and others, but for selecting the font used for `\mathrm`, etc. They can only be used in the preamble of the document. `\setboldmathrm` is used for specifying which fonts should be used in `\boldmath`.

```

61 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setmathrm:nn
62 {
63     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
64     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
65     \@@_setmathrm_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
66 }

```

(End definition for `\setmathrm`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setboldmathrm`

```

67 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setboldmathrm:nn
68 {

```

```

69 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
70 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
71     \@@_setboldmathrm_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
72 }

```

(End definition for `\setboldmathrm`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setmathsf`

```

73 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setmathsf:nn
74 {
75 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {#1} {#2}
76 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
77     \@@_setmathsf_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
78 }

```

(End definition for `\setmathsf`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\setmathtt`

```

79 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_setmathtt:nn
80 {
81 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {#1} {#2}
82 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
83     \@@_setmathtt_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
84 }

```

(End definition for `\setmathtt`. This function is documented on page ??.)

Hooks:

```

85 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmainfont_hook:nn \use_none:nn
86 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setsansfont_hook:nn \use_none:nn
87 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmonofont_hook:nn \use_none:nn
88 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmathrm_hook:nn \use_none:nn
89 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmathsf_hook:nn \use_none:nn
90 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmathtt_hook:nn \use_none:nn
91 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setboldmathrm_hook:nn \use_none:nn

```

Hmm, this isn't necessary with unicode-math; oh well:

```

92 \onlypreamble\setmathrm
93 \onlypreamble\setboldmathrm
94 \onlypreamble\setmathsf
95 \onlypreamble\setmathtt

```

If the commands above are not executed, then `\rmdefault` (*etc.*) will be used.

```

96 \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {\rmdefault}
97 \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {\sfdefault}
98 \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {\ttdefault}

```

`\@@_main_newfontfamily:nnnN`

The inner fontspec workings define a font family, which is then used in a typical NFSS `\fontfamily` declaration, saved in the macro name specified. The fourth argument determines which xparse function to set the macro with (new/renew/etc).

```

99 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnnN
100 {
101     \fontspec_set_family:cnn { l_@@_ \cs_to_str:N #1 _family_tl } {#2} {#3}
102     \use:x

```

```

103 {
104   \exp_not:N #4 \exp_not:N #1 {}
105   {
106     \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \use:c { l_@@_ \cs_to_str:N #1 _family_tl } }
107     \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
108     \exp_not:N \selectfont
109   }
110 }
111 }

```

(End definition for \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_main_newfontface:nnn \newfontface uses the fact that if the argument to BoldFont, etc., is empty (*i.e.*, BoldFont={}), then no bold font is searched for.

```

112 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_newfontface:nnn
113 {
114   \newfontfamily #1 [ BoldFont={},ItalicFont={},SmallCapsFont={},#2 ] {#3}
115 }

```

(End definition for \@@_main_newfontface:nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

1.2 Font feature selection

\@@_set_default_features:nn

```

116 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_default_features:nn
117 {
118   \IfBooleanTF {#1} \clist_gput_right:Nn \clist_gset:Nn
119     \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist {#2}
120 }

```

(End definition for \@@_set_default_features:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_set_font_default_features:nnn The optional argument #2 specifies font identifier(s). Branch for either (a) single token input such as \rmdefault, or (b) otherwise assume its a fontname. In that case, strip spaces and file extensions and lower-case to ensure consistency.

```

121 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn
122 {
123   <debug> \typeout{\unexpanded{\set_font_default_features:nnn:{#1}{#2}{#3}}}
124   \clist_map_inline:nn {#2}
125   {
126     \tl_if_single:nTF {##1}
127     { \tl_set:No \l_@@_tmp_tl { \cs:w l_@@_ \cs_to_str:N ##1 _family_tl\cs_end: } }
128     { \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {##1} }
129
130     \IfBooleanTF {#1}
131     {
132       \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl \l_@@_tmpb_tl
133       { \tl_clear:N \l_@@_tmpb_tl }
134       \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_tmpb_tl {#3,}
135       \prop_gput:NVV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl \l_@@_tmpb_tl
136     }
137   }

```

```

138         \tl_if_empty:nTF {#3}
139         { \prop_gremove:NV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl }
140         { \prop_gput:NVN \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl {#3,} }
141     }
142 }
143 }

```

(End definition for \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\addfontfeatures In order to be able to extend the feature selection of a given font, two things need to be known: the currently selected features, and the currently selected font. Every time a font family is created, this information is saved inside a control sequence with the name of the font family itself.

This macro extracts this information, then appends the requested font features to add to the already existing ones, and calls the font again with the top level \fontspec command.

The default options are *not* applied (which is why \g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl is emptied inside the group; this is allowed as \l_fontspec_family_tl is globally defined in \@@_select_font_family:nn), so this means that the only added features to the font are strictly those specified by this command.

\addfontfeature is defined as an alias, as I found that I often typed this instead when adding only a single font feature.

```

144 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_addfontfeatures:n
145 {
146   <debug> \typeout{^^J::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::^^J: addfontfeatures}
147   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
148   {
149     \group_begin:
150     \keys_set_known:nnN {fontspec-addfeatures} {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
151     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {options} \l_@@_options_tl
152     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {fontname} \l_@@_fontname_tl
153     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
154     <debug> \typeout{ \@@_select_font_family:nn { \l_@@_options_tl , #1 } {\l_@@_fontname_tl} }
155     \use:x
156     {
157       \@@_select_font_family:nn
158       { \l_@@_options_tl , #1 } {\l_@@_fontname_tl}
159     }
160     \group_end:
161     \fontfamily \g_@@_nfss_family_tl \selectfont
162   }
163   {
164     \@@_warning:nx {addfontfeatures-ignored} {#1}
165   }
166   \ignorespaces
167 }

```

(End definition for \addfontfeatures. This function is documented on page ??.)

1.3 Defining new font features

`\newfontfeature` `\newfontfeature` takes two arguments: the name of the feature tag by which to reference it, and the string that is used to select the font feature.

```

168 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_newfontfeature:nn
169 {
170   \keys_define:nn { fontspec }
171   {
172     #1 .code:n = { \@@_update_featstr:n {#2} }
173   }
174 }

```

(End definition for \newfontfeature. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\newAATfeature` This command assigns a new AAT feature by its code (#2,#3) to a new name (#1). Better than `\newfontfeature` because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```

175 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_newAATfeature:nnnn
176 {
177   \keys_if_exist:nnF { fontspec } {#1}
178   { \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {#1} }
179
180   \keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
181   { \@@_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
182
183   \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}
184 }

```

(End definition for \newAATfeature. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\newopentypefeature` This command assigns a new OpenType feature by its abbreviation (#2) to a new name (#1). Better than `\newfontfeature` because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```

185 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn
186 {
187   \keys_if_exist:nnF { fontspec / options } {#1}
188   { \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {#1} }
189
190   \keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
191   { \@@_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
192
193   \exp_args:Nnnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn
194   {#1} {#2} { \@@_strip_plus_minus:n {#3} } {#3} {}
195 }
196 \cs_new:Nn \@@_strip_plus_minus:n { \@@_strip_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1 \q_nil }
197 \cs_new:Npn \@@_strip_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1#2 \q_nil
198 {
199   \str_case:nnF {#1} { {+} {#2} {-} {#2} } {#1#2}
200 }

```

(End definition for \newopentypefeature. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\aliasfontfeature` User commands for renaming font features and font feature options.

```

201 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_aliasfontfeature:nn
202 {
203   <debug> \typeout{::::::::::::::::::::~^J:: aliasfontfeature{#1}{#2}}
204   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_alias_bool
205
206   \clist_map_inline:Nn \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
207   {
208     \keys_if_exist:nnT {##1} {#1}
209     {
210       <debug> \typeout{::: Key~exists~##1~/~#1}
211       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_alias_bool
212       \keys_define:nn {##1}
213       { #2 .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {####1} } } }
214     }
215   }
216
217   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_alias_bool
218   { \@@_warning:nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1} }
219 }

```

(End definition for `\aliasfontfeature`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\aliasfontfeatureoption`

```

220 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_aliasfontfeatureoption:nnn
221 {
222   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_alias_bool
223
224   \clist_map_inline:Nn \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
225   {
226     \keys_if_exist:nnT { ##1 / #1 } {#2}
227     {
228       <debug> \typeout{::: Keyval~exists~##1~/~#1~=#2}
229       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_alias_bool
230       \keys_define:nn { ##1 / #1 }
231       { #3 .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {#2} } } }
232     }
233
234     \keys_if_exist:nnT { ##1 / #1 } {#2Reset}
235     {
236       <debug> \typeout{::: Keyval~exists~##1~/~#1~=#2Reset}
237       \keys_define:nn { ##1 / #1 }
238       { #3Reset .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {#2Reset} } } }
239     }
240
241     \keys_if_exist:nnT { ##1 / #1 } {#20ff}
242     {
243       <debug> \typeout{::: Keyval~exists~##1~/~#1~=#20ff}
244       \keys_define:nn { ##1 / #1 }
245       { #30ff .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {#20ff} } } }
246     }
247   }

```

```

248
249 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_alias_bool
250 { \@@_warning:nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1/#2} }
251 }

```

(End definition for \aliasfontfeatureoption. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_main_DeclareFontExtensions:n

```

252 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_DeclareFontExtensions:n
253 {
254   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist { #1 }
255 }

```

Defaults:

```

256 \@@_main_DeclareFontExtensions:n {.otf,.ttf,.OTF,.TTF,.ttc,.TTC,.dfont}

```

(End definition for \@@_main_DeclareFontExtensions:n. This function is documented on page ??.)

\IfFontFeatureActiveTF

```

257 \cs_new:Nn \@@_main_IfFontFeatureActiveTF:nnn
258 {
259   <debug> \typeout{^^J::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::}
260   <debug> \typeout{:IfFontFeatureActiveTF \exp_not:n{#{1}{#2}{#3}}}
261   \@@_if_font_feature:nTF {#1} {#2} {#3}
262 }
263 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_font_feature:n {TF}
264 {
265   \tl_gclear:N \g_@@_single_feat_tl
266   \group_begin:
267     \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
268     \@@_init:
269     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
270     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_never_check_bool
271     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
272     \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
273     \@@_get_features:n {#1}
274   \group_end:
275
276   <debug> \typeout{:::> \exp_not:N\g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist->~{\g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist}}
277   <debug> \typeout{:::> \exp_not:N\g_@@_single_feat_tl->~{\g_@@_single_feat_tl}}
278
279   \tl_if_empty:NTF \g_@@_single_feat_tl { \prg_return_false: }
280   {
281     \exp_args:NV \fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF \g_@@_single_feat_tl
282     { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
283   }
284 }

```

(End definition for \IfFontFeatureActiveTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

File IX

fontspec-code-api.dtx

1 Programmer's interface

These functions are not used directly by fontspec when defining fonts; they are designed to be used by other packages who wish to do font-related things on top of fontspec itself.

Because I haven't fully explored how these functions will behave in practise, I am not giving them user-level names. As it becomes more clear which of these should be accessible by document writers, I'll open them up a little more.

All functions are defined assuming that the font to be queried is currently selected as a fontspec font. (I.e., via `\fontspec` or from a `\newfontfamily` macro or from `\setmainfont` and so on.)

```
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
1 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_fontspec_font: {TF,T,F}
2 {
3   \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
4 }
```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF. This function is documented on page ??.)

```
\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF Conditional to test if the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
5 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn {TF,T,F}
6 {
7   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
8   {
9     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
10    \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
11    {
12      \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:NnnTF \font {#1} {#2}
13      \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
14    }
15    {
16      \prg_return_false:
17    }
18  }
19  {
20    \prg_return_false:
21  }
22 }
```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

```
\fontspec_if_opentype:TF Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for LuaTeX fonts.
23 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_opentype: {TF,T,F}
24 {
25   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
26   {
```

```

27     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
28     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
29   }
30   {
31     \prg_return_false:
32   }
33 }

```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_opentype:TF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_if_feature:nTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_feature:
Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

34 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:n {TF,T,F}
35 {
36   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
37   {
38     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
39     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
40     {
41       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
42       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
43
44       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {lang-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
45       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
46
47       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_t
48       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
49
50       \@@_check_ot_feat:NnTF \font {#1} {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
51     }
52     {
53       \prg_return_false:
54     }
55   }
56   {
57     \prg_return_false:
58   }
59 }

```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_feature:nTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType
language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.:
\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum} {True} {False} Returns false
if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

60 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:nnn {TF,T,F}
61 {
62   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
63   {
64     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
65     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
66     {

```

```

67         \@@_check_ot_feat:NnnTF \font {#3} {#2} {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false
68     }
69     { \prg_return_false: }
70 }
71 { \prg_return_false: }
72 }

```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_if_script:nTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_script:nTF{ROM}{True}{False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

73 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_script:n {TF,T,F}
74 {
75     \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
76     {
77         \@@_set_font_type:N \font
78         \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
79         {
80             \@@_check_script:NnTF \font {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
81         }
82         { \prg_return_false: }
83     }
84     { \prg_return_false: }
85 }

```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_script:nTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_if_language:nTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nTF{ROM}{True}{False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

86 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:n {TF,T,F}
87 {
88     \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
89     {
90         \@@_set_font_type:N \font
91         \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
92         {
93             \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
94             \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
95             \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_t
96
97             \@@_check_lang:NnTF \font {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
98         }
99         { \prg_return_false: }
100     }
101     { \prg_return_false: }
102 }

```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_language:nTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\fontspec_if_language:nnTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in script #1. E.g.: `\fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyr1} {SRB} {True} {False}`. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

103 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:nn {TF,T,F}
104 {
105   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
106   {
107     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
108     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
109     {
110       \@@_check_lang:NnnTF \font {#2} {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
111     }
112     { \prg_return_false: }
113   }
114   { \prg_return_false: }
115 }

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_if_language:nnTF`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\fontspec_if_current_script:nTF` Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.

```

116 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_script:n {TF,T,F}
117 {
118   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
119   {
120     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
121     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
122     {
123       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
124       \str_if_eq:nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
125       {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
126     }
127     { \prg_return_false: }
128   }
129   { \prg_return_false: }
130 }

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_if_current_script:nTF`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\fontspec_if_current_language:nTF` Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.

```

131 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_language:n {TF,T,F}
132 {
133   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
134   {
135     \@@_set_font_type:N \font
136     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
137     {
138       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_fontinfo_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
139       \str_if_eq:nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
140       {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
141     }
142     { \prg_return_false: }
143   }

```

```

144     { \prg_return_false: }
145 }

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_if_current_language:nTF`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

\fontspec_set_family:Nnn #1 : family
                        #2 : fontspec features
                        #3 : font name

```

Defines a new font family from given *features* and *font*, and stores the name in the variable *family*. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

We want to store the actual name of the font family within the *family* variable because the actual L^AT_EX family name is automatically generated by fontspec and it's easier to keep it that way.

```

146 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_family:Nnn
147 {
148   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {#1}
149   \@@_select_font_family:nn {#2} {#3}
150   \tl_clear_new:N #1
151   \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \l_fontspec_family_tl
152 }
153 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_set_family:Nnn {c}

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_set_family:Nnn`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn TODO: the round-about approach of using \fontname means that settings such as fontdi-
                             mens will be lost. (Discovered in unicode-math.) Investigate!

```

```

154 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn
155 {
156   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {#1}
157   \@@_select_font_family:nn {#3}{#4}
158   \global \font #1 = \fontname \l_fontspec_font \scan_stop:
159   \tl_set_eq:NN #2 \l_fontspec_family_tl
160 }

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

\fontspec_font_if_exist:n

```

```

161 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_font_if_exist:n {TF,T,F}
162 {
163   \group_begin:
164     \@@_init:
165     \@@_if_detect_external:nT {#1} { \@@_font_is_file: }
166     \@@_primitive_font_if_exist:nTF { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {#1} {} }
167     { \group_end: \prg_return_true: }
168     { \group_end: \prg_return_false: }
169 }
170 \cs_set_eq:NN \IfFontExistsTF \fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_font_if_exist:n`. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType feature tag #1.

```
171 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_feature:n {TF,T,F}
172 {
173   \exp_args:Nxx \tl_if_in:nnTF
174   { \fontname\font } { \tl_to_str:n {#1} }
175   { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
176 }
```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_if_small_caps:TF

```
177 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_small_caps: {TF,T,F}
178 {
179   \@@_if_merge_shape:nTF {sc}
180   {
181     \tl_set_eq:Nc \l_@@_smcp_shape_tl { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {sc} }
182   }
183   {
184     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_smcp_shape_tl {sc}
185   }
186
187   \cs_if_exist:cTF { \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\l_@@_smcp_shape_tl }
188   {
189     \tl_if_eq:ccTF
190     { \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\l_@@_smcp_shape_tl }
191     { \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\updefault }
192     { \prg_return_false: }
193     { \prg_return_true: }
194   }
195   { \prg_return_false: }
196 }
```

(End definition for \fontspec_if_small_caps:TF. This function is documented on page ??.)

File X

fontspec-code-internal.dtx

1 Internals

1.1 The main function for setting fonts

<code>\@@_select_font_family:nn</code>	This is the command that defines font families for use, the underlying procedure of all <code>\fontspec</code> -like commands. Given a list of font features (<code>#1</code>) for a requested font (<code>#2</code>), it will define an NFSS family for that font and put the family name (globally) into <code>\l_fontspec_family_tl</code> . The TeX <code>'\font'</code> command is (globally) stored in <code>\l_fontspec_font</code> .
--	--

This macro does its processing inside a group to attempt to restrict the scope of its internal processing. This works to some degree to insulate the internal commands from having to be manually cleared.

Some often-used variables to know about:

- `\l_fontspec_fontname_tl` is used as the generic name of the font being defined.
- `\l_@@_fontid_tl` is the unique identifier of the font with all its features.
- `\l_@@_fontname_up_tl` is the font specifically to be used as the upright font.
- `\l_@@_basename_tl` is the (immutable) original argument used for *-replacing.
- `\l_fontspec_font` is the plain TeX font of the upright font requested.

```

1 \cs_new_protected:Nn \@@_select_font_family:nn
2 {
3   <debug>\typeout{^^J^^J::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::^^J:: fontspec_select:nn~ {#1}~ {#2} }
4   \group_begin:
5   \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
6   \@@_init:
7
8   \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
9   \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_up_tl {#2}
10  \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_basename_tl {#2}
11
12  \@@_if_detect_external:nT {#2}
13    { \keys_set:nn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Path} }
14
15  \keys_set_known:nn {fontspec-preparse-cfg} {#1}
16
17  \@@_init_ttc:n {#2}
18  \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
19
20  \@@_extract_all_features:n {#1}
21  \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_fontid_tl { \tl_to_str:N \l_fontspec_fontname_tl-:-\tl_to_str:N \l_@@_al
22
23  <debug>\typeout{fontid: \l_@@_fontid_tl}
24
25  \@@_preparse_features:

```

```

26 \@@_load_font:
27 \@@_set_scriptlang:
28 \@@_get_features:n {}
29 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
30
31 \@@_save_family_needed:nTF {#2}
32 {
33   \@@_save_family:nn {#1} {#2}
34 <debug>\@@_warning:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
35 }
36 {
37 <debug>\typeout{Font~ family~ already~ defined.}
38 }
39 \group_end:
40
41 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_family_tl \g_@@_nfss_family_tl
42 }

```

(End definition for \@@_select_font_family:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_select:nn This old name has been used by 3rd party packages so for compatibility:

```

43 \cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_select:nn \@@_select_font_family:nn %% deprecated, for compatibility

```

(End definition for \fontspec_select:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn Assigns font name #2 to token list variable #1 and strips extension(s) from it in the case of an external font. We strip spaces for luatex for consistency with luaotfload, although I'm not sure this is necessary any more. At one stage this also lowercased the name, but this step has been removed unless someone can remind me why it was necessary.

```

44 \cs_new:Nn \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn
45 {
46   \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2}
47 <LU> \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 {~}
48   \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
49   {
50     \tl_if_in:NnT #1 {##1}
51     {
52       \tl_remove_once:Nn #1 {##1}
53       \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_extension_tl {##1}
54       \clist_map_break:
55     }
56   }
57 }

```

(End definition for \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_if_detect_external:nT Check if either the fontname ends with a known font extension.

```

58 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_detect_external:n {T}
59 {
60 <debug> \typeout{: @@@_if_detect_external:n { \exp_not:n {#1} } }
61   \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
62   {

```

```

63     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool
64     \exp_args:Nx % <- this should be handled earlier
65     \tl_if_in:nnT {#1 <= end_of_string} {##1 <= end_of_string}
66     { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool \clist_map_break: }
67   }
68   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_tmpa_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
69 }

```

(End definition for \@@_if_detect_external:nT. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_init_ttc:n For TTC fonts we assume they will be loading the italic/bold fonts from the same file, so prepopulate the fontnames to avoid needing to do it manually.

```

70 \cs_new:Nn \@@_init_ttc:n
71 {
72   \str_if_eq:eeT { \str_lower_case:f { \l_@@_extension_tl } } {.ttc}
73   {
74     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_it_tl {#1}
75     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl {#1}
76     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
77   }
78 }

```

(End definition for \@@_init_ttc:n. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn Load a possible .fontspec font configuration file. This file could set font-specific options for the font about to be loaded.

```

79 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn
80 {
81   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
82   {
83     <debug> \typeout{: @@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \exp_not:N #1 {#2} }
84     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn #1 {#2}
85     \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {#1.fontspec}
86     \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {~}
87     \prop_if_in:NVF \g_@@_fontopts_prop #1
88     {
89       \exp_args:No \file_if_exist:nT { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl }
90       { \file_input:n { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl } }
91     }
92   }
93 }

```

(End definition for \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_extract_all_features:

```

94 \cs_new:Nn \@@_extract_all_features:n
95 {
96   <debug> \typeout{: @@@_extract_all_features:n { \unexpanded {#1} } }
97   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
98   {
99     \clist_set:Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist {#1}
100   }

```

```

101 {
102   \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
103   { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
104
105   \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_family_label_tl \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist
106   { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist }
107   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_family_label_tl
108
109   \clist_set:Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist
110   {
111     \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist,
112     \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist,
113     \l_@@_fontopts_clist,
114     #1
115   }
116 }
117 }

```

(End definition for \@@_extract_all_features:. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_preparse_features: #1 : feature options
#2 : font name

Perform the (multi-step) feature parsing process.

Convert the requested features to font definition strings. First the features are parsed for information about font loading (whether it's a named font or external font, etc.), and then information is extracted for the names of the other shape fonts.

```

118 \cs_new:Nn \@@_preparse_features:
119 {
120   <debug> \typeout{: \@@_preparse_features:}

```

Detect if external fonts are to be used, possibly automatically, and parse fontspec features for bold/italic fonts and their features.

```

121
122   \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse-external}
123   { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
124   \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
125

```

When \l_fontspec_fontname_tl is augmented with a prefix or whatever to create the name of the upright font (\l_@@_fontname_up_tl), this latter is the new 'general font name' to use.

```

126   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontname_up_tl
127   \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
128   \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
129   \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
130   \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
131 }

```

(End definition for \@@_preparse_features:. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_load_font:

```

132 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_font:
133 {

```

```

134 <debug>\typeout{:: @@_load_font}
135 <debug>\typeout{Set~ base~ font~ for~ preliminary~ analysis: \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_
136 \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font
137 { \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl } {} } {\f@size pt}
138 \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error:nx {font-not-found} {\l_@@_fon
139 \@@_set_font_type:N \l_fontspec_font
140 <debug>\typeout{Set~ base~ font~ properly: \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl }
141 \@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn \l_fontspec_font
142 { \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl } {} } {\f@size pt}
143 \l_fontspec_font % this is necessary for LuaLaTeX to check the scripts properly
144 }

```

(End definition for \@@_load_font:. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_construct_font_call:nn Constructs the complete font invocation. #1 : Base name
#2 : Extension
#3 : TTC Index
#4 : Renderer
#5 : Optical size
#6 : Font features

We check if ** are empty and if so don't add in the separator colon.

```

145 \cs_new:Nn \@@_construct_font_call:nnnnnn
146 {
147 <XE> " \@@_fontname_wrap:n { #1 #2 #3 }
148 <LU> " \@@_fontname_wrap:n { #1 #2 } #3
149 #4 #5
150 \str_if_eq:eeF {#6}{ } {:#6} "
151 }

```

In practice, we don't use the six-argument version, since most arguments are constructed on-the-fly:

```

152 \cs_new:Nn \@@_construct_font_call:nn
153 {
154 \@@_construct_font_call:nnnnnn
155 {#1}
156 \l_@@_extension_tl
157 \l_@@_ttc_index_tl
158 \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
159 \l_@@_optical_size_tl
160 {#2}
161 }

```

(End definition for \@@_construct_font_call:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_font_is_file: The \@@_fontname_wrap:n command takes the font name and either passes it through unchanged or wraps it in the syntax for loading a font 'by filename'. Xe_{La}TeX's syntax is followed since luaotfload provides compatibility.

```

162 \cs_new:Nn \@@_font_is_name:
163 {
164 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_fontname_wrap:n \use:n
165 }

```

```

166 \cs_new:Nn \@@_font_is_file:
167 {
168   \cs_set:Npn \@@_fontname_wrap:n ##1 { [ \l_@@_font_path_tl ##1 ] }
169 }

```

(End definition for \@@_font_is_file: and \@@_font_is_name:. These functions are documented on page ??.)

\@@_set_scriptlang: Only necessary for OpenType fonts. First check if the font supports scripts, then apply defaults if none are explicitly requested. Similarly with the language settings.

```

170 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_scriptlang:
171 {
172   <debug> \typeout{:: _set_scriptlang:}
173   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
174   {
175     \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_script_name_tl
176     {
177       \@@_check_script:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {latn}
178       {
179         \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {Latin}
180         \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
181         {
182           \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
183         }
184         \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
185         \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
186         <debug> \typeout{::: Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl, Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
187       }
188       {
189         <debug> \typeout{::: NADA}
190         \@@_info:n {no-scripts}
191         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_never_check_bool
192       }
193     }
194     {
195       \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
196       {
197         \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
198       }
199       \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
200       \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
201       <debug> \typeout{::: Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl, Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
202     }
203   }
204 }

```

(End definition for \@@_set_scriptlang:. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_get_features:Nn This macro is a wrapper for \keys_set:n which expands and adds a default specification to the original passed options. It begins by initialising the commands used to hold font-feature specific strings. Its argument is any additional features to prepend to the default.

Do not set the colour if not explicitly spec'd else \color (using specials) will not work.

```

205 \cs_new:Nn \@@_get_features:n

```

```

206 {
207 <debug> \typeout{:: @@_get_features:Nn { \exp_not:n {#1} } }
208 \@@_init_fontface:
209 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_fontfeat_clist,#1}
210 \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
211 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
212 <*XE>
213 \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
214 {
215 <debug> \typeout{:: Setting~ keys~ for~ OpenType~ font~ features::~"\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
216 \keys_set:nV {fontspec-opentype} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
217 }
218 {
219 <debug> \typeout{:: Setting~ keys~ for~ AAT/Graphite~ font~ features::~"\l_@@_keys_leftover_
220 \bool_if:N { \l_@@_atsui_bool || \l_@@_graphite_bool }
221 { \keys_set:nV {fontspec-aat} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist }
222 }
223 </XE>
224 <*LU>
225 <debug> \typeout{:: Setting~ keys~ for~ OpenType~ font~ features::~"\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
226 \keys_set:nV {fontspec-opentype} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
227 </LU>
228
229 \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_mapping_tl
230 { \@@_update_featstr:n { mapping = \l_@@_mapping_tl } }
231
232 \str_if_eq:eeF { \l_@@_hexcol_tl \l_@@_opacity_tl }
233 { \c_@@_hexcol_tl \c_@@_opacity_tl }
234 { \@@_update_featstr:n { color = \l_@@_hexcol_tl\l_@@_opacity_tl } }
235 }

```

(End definition for \@@_get_features:Nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_save_family_needed:nTF Check if the family is unique and, if so, save its information. (\addfontfeature and other macros use this data.) Then the font family and its shapes are defined in the NFSS.

Now we have a unique (in fact, too unique!) string that contains the family name and every option in abbreviated form. This is used with a counter to create a simple NFSS family name for the font we're selecting.

```

236 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_save_family_needed:n { TF }
237 {
238
239 <debug> \typeout{save~ family::~ #1}
240 <debug> \typeout{== fontid_tl: "\l_@@_fontid_tl".}
241
242 \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
243 {
244 \prop_get:NVNTF \g_@@_fontid_family_prop \l_@@_fontid_tl \l_@@_tmp_tl
245 {
246 \tl_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_nfss_family_tl \l_@@_tmp_tl
247 \prg_return_false:
248 }

```

```

249     {
250         \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {#1}
251         \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl { ~ }
252         \@@_save_fontid_family:VV \l_@@_fontid_tl \l_@@_tmp_tl
253         \prg_return_true:
254     }
255 }
256 {
257     \tl_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_nfss_family_tl \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
258     \cs_undefine:c { g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop }
259     \prg_return_true:
260 }
261 }
262 \cs_new:Nn \@@_save_fontid_family:nn
263 {
264     \prop_get:NnNTF \g_@@_family_int_prop {#2} \l_@@_tmp_tl
265     {
266         \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl
267             { \int_eval:n { \l_@@_tmp_tl + 1 } }
268     }
269     { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl { 0 } }
270     \prop_gput:NnV \g_@@_family_int_prop {#2} \l_@@_tmp_tl
271     \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_nfss_family_tl { #2 ( \l_@@_tmp_tl ) }
272     \prop_gput:NnV \g_@@_fontid_family_prop {#1} \g_@@_nfss_family_tl
273 }
274 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_save_fontid_family:nn { VV }

```

(End definition for \@@_save_family_needed:nTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_save_family:nn Saves the relevant font information for future processing.

```

275 \cs_new:Nn \@@_save_family:nn
276 {
277     \@@_save_fontinfo:n {#2}
278     \@@_find_autofonts:
279     \DeclareFontFamily{\g_@@_nfss_enc_tl}{\g_@@_nfss_family_tl}{}
280     \@@_set_faces:
281     \@@_info:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
282 }

```

(End definition for \@@_save_family:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_save_fontinfo:n Saves the relevant font information for future processing.

```

283 \cs_new:Nn \@@_save_fontinfo:n
284 {
285     \prop_new:c {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop}
286     \prop_gput:cnx {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {fontname} { #1 }
287     \prop_gput:cnx {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {options} { \l_@@_all_features }
288     \prop_gput:cnx {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {fontdef}
289     {
290         \@@_construct_font_call:nn {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl}
291         { \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist }
292     }

```



```

293 \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_script_int
294 \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {lang-num} \l_@@_language_in
295 \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspeg_scrip
296 \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_fontinfo_ \g_@@_nfss_family_tl _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspeg_lang_
297 }

```

(End definition for \@@_save_fontinfo:n. This function is documented on page ??.)

1.2 Setting font shapes in a family

All NFSS specifications take their default values, so if any of them are redefined, the shapes will be selected to fit in with the current state. For example, if \bfdefault is redefined to b, all bold shapes defined by this package will also be assigned to b.

The combination shapes are searched first because they use information that may be redefined in the single cases. E.g., if no bold font is specified then set_autofont will attempt to set it. This has subtle/small ramifications on the logic of choosing the bold italic font.

\@@_find_autofonts:

```

298 \cs_new:Nn \@@_find_autofonts:
299 {
300   \bool_if:nF {\l_@@_noit_bool || \l_@@_nobf_bool}
301   {
302     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_@@_fontname_it_tl} {/B}
303     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_@@_fontname_bf_tl} {/I}
304     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl} {/BI}
305   }
306
307   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nobf_bool
308   {
309     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl} {/B}
310   }
311
312   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_noit_bool
313   {
314     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_it_tl {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl} {/I}
315   }
316
317   \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl {\l_@@_fontname_sl_tl} {/B}
318 }

```

(End definition for \@@_find_autofonts:. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_set_faces:

```

319 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_faces:
320 {
321   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn \mddefault \updefault \l_fontspeg_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_u
322   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn \bfdefault \updefault \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clis
323   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn \mddefault \itdefault \l_@@_fontname_it_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clis
324   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn \mddefault \sldefault \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clis
325   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn \bfdefault \itdefault \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_cl
326   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn \bfdefault \sldefault \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_cl

```

```

327
328 \prop_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_nfssfont_prop { \@@_set_faces_aux:nnnnn ##2 }
329 }
330 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_faces_aux:nnnnn
331 {
332 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#3}
333 \@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#1} {#2} {#4} {#5}
334 }

```

(End definition for \@@_set_faces:. This function is documented on page ??.)

\fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn This macro defines #1 as the input with any * tokens of its input replaced by the font name. This lets us define supplementary fonts in full (“Baskerville Semibold”) or in abbreviation (“* Semibold”).

```

335 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn
336 {
337 \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2}
338 \tl_replace_all:Nnx #1 {*} {\l_@@_basename_tl}
339 <LU> \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 {~}
340 }

```

(End definition for \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn #1 : series
#2 : shape
#3 : fontname
#4 : fontspec features

```

341 \cs_new:Nn \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn
342 {
343 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_this_font_tl {#3}
344
345 \tl_if_empty:xTF {#4}
346 { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}} }
347 { \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse-nested} {#4} \l_@@_tmp_tl }
348
349 \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_this_font_tl
350 {
351 \prop_put:Nxx \l_@@_nfssfont_prop {#1/#2}
352 { {#1}{#2}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{#4}{\l_@@_sizefeat_clist} }
353 }
354 }

```

(End definition for \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

1.2.1 Fonts

\@@_set_font_type:N Now check if the font is to be rendered with ATSUI or Harfbuzz. This will either be automatic (based on the font type), or specified by the user via a font feature.

This macro sets booleans accordingly depending if the font in \l_fontspec_font is an AAT font or an OpenType font or a font with feature axes (either AAT or Multiple Master), respectively.

```

355 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_type:N
356 {
357   <debug> \typeout{:: \@@_set_font_type:}
358   <*XE>
359   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
360   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
361   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_ot_bool
362   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_mm_bool
363   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
364   \ifcase\XeTeXfonttype #1
365   <debug> \typeout{::: TFM}
366   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
367   \or
368   <debug> \typeout{::: AAT}
369   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
370   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl { \tl_set:Nn \l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl {/AAT} }
371   \ifnum\XeTeXcountvariations #1 > 0\relax
372   <debug> \typeout{::: MM}
373   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_mm_bool
374   \fi
375   \or
376   <debug> \typeout{::: OpenType}
377   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
378   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl { \tl_set:Nn \l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl {/OT} }
379   \or
380   <debug> \typeout{::: Graphite}
381   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
382   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl { \tl_set:Nn \l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl {/GR} }
383   \fi
384   </XE>

```

If automatic, the `\l_fonts_spec_renderer_tl` token list will still be empty (other suffices that could be added will be later in the feature processing), and if it is indeed still empty, assign it a value so that the other weights of the font are specifically loaded with the same renderer.

LuaTeX only supports one:

```

385 <*LU>
386   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
387 </LU>
388 }

```

(End definition for `\@@_set_font_type:N`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_set_autofont:Nnn` #1 : Font name `tl`
 #2 : Base font name
 #3 : Font name modifier

This function looks for font with `<name>` and `<modifier>` #2#3, and if found (i.e., different to font with name #2) stores it in `tl` #1. A modifier is something like `/B` to look for a bold font, for example.

We can't match external fonts in this way (in X_YTeX anyway; todo: test with LuaTeX). If `` is not empty, then it's already been specified by the user so abort. If `<Base font name>` is not given, we also abort for obvious reasons.

If $\langle \text{font name } tl \rangle$ is empty, then proceed. If not found, $\langle \text{font name } tl \rangle$ remains empty. Otherwise, we have a match.

```

389 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_autofont:Nnn
390 {
391   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_external_bool
392   {
393     \tl_if_empty:xF {#2}
394     {
395       \tl_if_empty:NT #1
396       {
397         \@@_if_autofont:nnTF {#2} {#3}
398         { \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2#3} }
399         { \@@_info:nx {no-font-shape} {#2#3} }
400       }
401     }
402   }
403 }
404 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_autofont:nn {T,TF}
405 {
406   \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_tmpa_font { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {#1} {} } {\f@size
407   \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_tmpb_font { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {#1#2} {} } {\f@size
408   \str_if_eq:eeTF { \fontname \l_tmpa_font } { \fontname \l_tmpb_font }
409   { \prg_return_false: }
410   { \prg_return_true: }
411 }

```

(End definition for \@@_set_autofont:Nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn #1 : Font name
 #2 : Font series
 #3 : Font shape
 #4 : Font features
 #5 : Size features

This macro eventually uses \DeclareFontShape to define the font shape in question.

```

412 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn
413 {
414   \group_begin:
415   \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse-external} { #4 } \l_@@_leftover_clist
416   \@@_load_fontname:n {#1}
417   \@@_declare_shape:nxxx {#2} {#3} { \l_@@_fontopts_clist, \l_@@_leftover_clist } {#5}
418   \group_end:
419 }
420 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_fontname:n
421 {
422   <debug> \typeout{:: @@@_load_fontname:n {#1} }
423   \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#1}
424   \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
425   { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
426   \keys_set_groups:nnV {fontspec/fontname} {getfontname} \l_@@_fontopts_clist
427   \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {\l_fontspec_fon

```

```

428 \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error:nx {font-not-found} {#1} }
429 }
430 \keys_define:nn {fontspec/fontname}
431 {
432   Font .tl_set:N = \l_fontspec_fontname_tl ,
433   Font .groups:n = {getfontname} ,
434 }

```

(End definition for \@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

\@@_declare_shape:nnnn #1 : Font series
                        #2 : Font shape
                        #3 : Font features
                        #4 : Size features

```

Wrapper for \DeclareFontShape. And finally the actual font shape declaration using \l_@@_nfss_tl defined above. \l_@@_postadjust_tl is defined in various places to deal with things like the hyphenation character and interword spacing.

The main part is to loop through SizeFeatures arguments, which are of the form
SizeFeatures={{<one>},{<two>},{<three>}}.

```

435 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape:nnnn
436 {
437   <debug>\typeout{~= declare_shape:~{\l_fontspec_fontname_tl}~{#1}~{#2}}
438   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_nfss_tl
439   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
440   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
441
442   \exp_args:Nx \clist_map_inline:nn {#4} { \@@_setup_single_size:nn {#3} {##1} }
443
444   \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn {#1} {#2}
445   \@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn {#1} {#2}
446   \@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn {#1} {#2}
447   \@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn {#1} {#2}
448 }
449 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_declare_shape:nnnn {nnxx}

```

(End definition for \@@_declare_shape:nnnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

\@@_setup_single_size:nn

```

```

450 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setup_single_size:nn
451 {
452   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_size_tl
453   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_sizedfont_tl \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl % in case not spec'ed
454
455   \keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-sizing} { \exp_after:wN \use:n #2 }
456   \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist
457   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_size_tl { \@@_error:n {no-size-info} }
458   <debug>\typeout{=== size:~\l_@@_size_tl}
459
460   % "normal"
461   \@@_load_fontname:n {\l_@@_sizedfont_tl}

```

```

462 \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn \l_@@_nfss_tl {#1} {\l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist} {}
463 <debug> \typeout{====~ sized~ font:~ \l_@@_sizedfont_tl}
464
465 % small caps
466 \clist_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
467
468 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
469 {
470   \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl
471   {
472     \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
473     {
474 <debug>\typeout{====~Small~ caps~ found.}
475       \clist_put_left:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist {Letters=SmallCaps}
476     }
477     {
478 <debug>\typeout{====~Small~ caps~ not~ found.}
479       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
480     }
481   }
482   { \@@_load_fontname:n {\l_@@_fontname_sc_tl} }% local for each size
483 }
484
485 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
486 {
487   \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
488   {#1} {\l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist} {\l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist}
489 }
490 }

```

(End definition for \@@_setup_single_size:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn

```

491 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn
492 {
493 <debug>\typeout{====~Setup-NFSS~shape:~<\l_@@_size_tl>~\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl}
494
495   \@@_get_features:n { #2 , #3 , #4 }
496 <debug>\typeout{====~Gathered~features:~\g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist}
497
498   \tl_put_right:Nx #1
499   {
500     <\l_@@_size_tl> \l_@@_scale_tl
501     \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_fontspeg_fontname_tl }
502     { \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist }
503   }
504 }

```

(End definition for \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn

```

505 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn

```

```

506 {
507   \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\g_@@_nfss_enc_tl} {\g_@@_nfss_family_tl}
508     {#1} {#2} {\l_@@_nfss_tl}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
509 }

```

(End definition for \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn

```

510 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn
511 {
512   \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
513   {
514     \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\g_@@_nfss_enc_tl} {\g_@@_nfss_family_tl} {#1}
515       { \@@_combo_sc_shape:n {#2} } {\l_@@_nfss_sc_tl} {\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
516   }
517 }
518 \cs_new:Nn \@@_combo_sc_shape:n
519 {
520   \tl_if_exist:cTF { \@@_shape_merge:nn {#1} {\scdefault} }
521     { \tl_use:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {#1} {\scdefault} } }
522     { \scdefault }
523 }

```

(End definition for \@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn

```

524 \cs_new:Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn
525 {
526   <debug>\typeout{DeclareFontShape:~{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}...}
527   \group_begin:
528   \normalsize
529   \cs_undefine:c {#1/#2/#3/#4/\f@size}
530   \group_end:
531   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}
532   }
533 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn {xxxxxx}

```

This extra stuff for the slanted shape substitution is a little bit awkward. We define the slanted shape to be a synonym for it when (a) we're defining an italic font, but also (b) when the default slanted shape isn't 'it'. (Presumably this turned up once in a test and I realised it caused problems. I doubt this would happen much.)

\@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn

We should test when a slanted font has been specified and not run this code if so, but the \@@_set_slanted: code will overwrite this anyway if necessary.

```

534 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn
535 {
536   \bool_if:nT
537   {
538     \str_if_eq_p:ee {#2} {\itdefault} &&
539     !(\str_if_eq_p:ee {\itdefault} {\sldefault})
540   }
541   {

```

```

542 \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\g_@@_nfss_enc_tl}{\g_@@_nfss_family_tl}{#1}{\sldefault}
543 {\<->ssub*\g_@@_nfss_family_tl/#1/\itdefault}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
544 }
545 }

```

Lastly some informative messaging.

```

\@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn 546 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn
547 {
548   \tl_gput_right:Nx \g_@@_defined_shapes_tl
549   {
550     \exp_not:n { \ }
551     -- \exp_not:N \str_case:nn {#1/#2}
552     {
553       {\mddefault/\updefault} {'normal'~}
554       {\bfdefault/\updefault} {'bold'~}
555       {\mddefault/\itdefault} {'italic'~}
556       {\mddefault/\sldefault} {'slanted'~}
557       {\bfdefault/\itdefault} {'bold~ italic'~}
558       {\bfdefault/\sldefault} {'bold~ slanted'~}
559     } (#1/#2)~
560     with~ NFSS~ spec.:~
561     \l_@@_nfss_tl
562     \exp_not:n { \ }
563     -- \exp_not:N \str_case:nn { #1 / \@@_combo_sc_shape:n {#2} }
564     {
565       {\mddefault/\scdefault} {'small~ caps'~}
566       {\bfdefault/\scdefault} {'bold~ small~ caps'~}
567       {\mddefault/\itscdefault} {'italic~ small~ caps'~}
568       {\bfdefault/\itscdefault} {'bold~ italic~ small~ caps'~}
569       {\mddefault/\slscdefault} {'slanted~ small~ caps'~}
570       {\bfdefault/\slscdefault} {'bold~ slanted~ small~ caps'~}
571     }~( #1 / \@@_combo_sc_shape:n {#2} )~
572     with~ NFSS~ spec.:~
573     \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
574     \tl_if_empty:fF {\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
575     {
576       \exp_not:N \ and~ font~ adjustment~ code:
577       \exp_not:N \ \l_@@_postadjust_tl
578     }
579   }
580 }

```

Maybe `\str_if_eq:eeF` would be better?

1.2.2 Features

These are the features always applied to a font selection before other features.

```

\l_@@_pre_feat_sclist 581 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist
582 {*XE}
583 {
584   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_ot_bool
585   {

```



```

586     \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
587     {
588         script    = \l_fontspec_script_tl ;
589         language = \l_fontspec_lang_tl    ;
590     }
591 }
592 }
593 </XE>
594 <*LU>
595 {
596     mode        = \l_fontspec_mode_tl    ;
597     \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
598     {
599         script    = \l_fontspec_script_tl ;
600         language = \l_fontspec_lang_tl    ;
601     }
602 }
603 </LU>

```

This macro checks if the font contains small caps.

```

\@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF
604 <LU>\cs_new:Nn \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
605 <XE>\cs_new:Nn \@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF
606 {
607     \@@_check_ot_feat:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {smcp} {#1} {#2}
608 }
609 <*XE>
610 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
611 {
612     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
613     { \@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF {#1} {#2} }
614     {
615         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
616         { \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:NnnTF \l_fontspec_font {3}{3} {#1} {#2} }
617     }
618 }
619 </XE>

```

\g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist is the string used to define the list of specific font features. Each time another font feature is requested, this macro is used to add that feature to the list. Font features are separated by semicolons.

```

620 \cs_new:Nn \@@_update_featstr:n
621 {
622 <debug>         \typeout{::: \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}}
623     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
624     {
625         \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { #1 }
626 <debug>         \typeout{:::~ Adding~ feature.}
627         \tl_gput_right:Nx \g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {#1;}
628     }
629 }

```

```

\@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n 630 \cs_new:Nn \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n
631 {
632   \debug \typeout{::: \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n {#1}}
633   \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
634   {
635     \debug \typeout{:::~ Removing~ feature~ "##1;}
636     \tl_gremove_all:Nn \g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {##1;}
637   }
638 }

```

1.3 Initialisation

Initialisations that need to occur once per fontspec font invocation. (Some of these may be redundant. Check whether they're assigned to globally or not.)

```

\@@_init: 639 \cs_set:Npn \@@_init:
640 {
641   \debug \typeout{: \@@_init:}
642   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_ot_bool
643   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
644   \@@_font_is_name:
645   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_font_path_tl
646   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_optical_size_tl
647   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_ttc_index_tl
648   \tl_clear:N \l_fontspeg_renderer_tl
649   \tl_gclear:N \g_@@_defined_shapes_tl
650   \tl_gclear:N \g_@@_curr_series_tl
651   \tl_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl \g_fontspeg_encoding_tl
652   \*LU
653   \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspeg_mode_tl {node}
654   \int_set:Nn \prehyphenchar { \- } % fixme
655   \int_zero:N \posthyphenchar % fixme
656   \int_zero:N \preexhyphenchar % fixme
657   \int_zero:N \postexhyphenchar % fixme
658   \*LU
659 }

```

Executed in \@@_get_features:Nn.

```

\@@_init_fontface: 660 \cs_new:Nn \@@_init_fontface:
661 {
662   \tl_gclear:N \g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
663   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_scale_tl
664   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_opacity_tl \c_@@_opacity_tl
665   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_hexcol_tl \c_@@_hexcol_tl
666   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_postadjust_tl \c_@@_postadjust_tl
667   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
668   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
669 }

```

1.4 Miscellaneous

This macro takes an OpenType tag and validates it.

```
\@@_ot_validate_tag:n
670 <*LU>
671 \cs_new_protected:Nn \@@_ot_validate_tag:n
672 {
673   \@@_ot_validate_tag:w #1 \q_nil
674 }
675 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_ot_validate_tag:n {x}
676 \cs_set:Npn \@@_ot_validate_tag:w #1 #2 \q_nil
677 {
678   \bool_if:nTF { \str_if_eq_p:nn {#1} {+} || \str_if_eq_p:nn {#1} {-} }
679     { \@@_ot_validate_tag_aux:w #2 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil }
680     { \@@_ot_validate_tag_aux:w #1#2 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil }
681 }
682 \cs_set:Npn \@@_ot_validate_tag_aux:w #1#2#3#4#5 \q_nil
683 {
684   \int_compare:nT { \tl_count:n {#5} > 2 }
685     { \@@_error:nx {ot-tag-too-long} {#1#2#3#4#5} }
686 }
687 </LU>
```

This macro takes a four character string and converts it to the numerical representation required for X_YTeX OpenType script/language/feature purposes. The output is stored in #1.

\@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn

This code is not used in LuaTeX, as the checking for that engine is done via Lua code provided by luaotfload.

```
688 <*XE>
689 \cs_new:Nn \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn
690 {
691   \@@_strip_leading_sign:Nw #1#2 \q_nil
692 }
693 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn {Nx}
```

The input can be of the form of any of these: ‘abcd’, ‘abc’, ‘abc ’, ‘ab’, ‘ab ’, etc. (It is assumed the first two chars are *always* not spaces.) So this macro reads in the string padded with \c_empty_tl s, and anything beyond four chars is snipped. The \c_empty_tl s then are used to reconstruct the spaces in the string to number calculation.

For backwards compatibility this code also strips a leading + or -.

```
694 \cs_set:Npn \@@_strip_leading_sign:Nw #1#2#3 \q_nil
695 {
696   \bool_if:nTF { \str_if_eq_p:nn {#2} {+} || \str_if_eq_p:nn {#2} {-} }
697     { \@@_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #3 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil }
698     { \@@_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil }
699 }
```

If input string (after sign is stripped) is more than 4 chars, #6 will contain ‘*excess*’\c_empty_tl\c_empty_tl. Therefore use #6 to verify string length.

```
700 \cs_set:Npn \@@_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3#4#5#6 \q_nil
701 {
```

```

702 \int_compare:nT { \tl_count:n {#6} > 2 }
703   { \@@_error:nx {ot-tag-too-long} {#2#3#4#5#6} }
704
705 \str_if_eq:eeTF {#2#3#4#5#6} {DFLT}
706   {
707     \int_set:Nn #1 {0}
708   }
709   {
710
711     \int_set:Nn #1
712     {
713       `#2 * "10000000
714       + `#3 * "10000
715       + \ifx \c_empty_tl #4 32 \else `#4 \fi * "100
716       + \ifx \c_empty_tl #5 32 \else `#5 \fi
717     }
718   }
719 }
720 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn {No}
721 </XE>

```

File XI

fontspec-code-opentype.dtx

1 OpenType definitions code

```
\@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n 1 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n
2 {
3   \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype} { #1 .multichoice: }
4 }

#1 : Feature key
\@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn #2 : Feature option val
#3 : Check feature — leave empty for no check
#4 : Exact tag string to activate — leave empty for disable only
#5 : Tags to remove (clist)

5 \cs_new:Nn \@@_feat_prop_add:nn
6 {
7   \tl_if_empty:nF {#1}
8   {
9     \prop_if_in:NnF \g_@@_OT_features_prop {#1}
10    {
11      \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_OT_features_prop {#1} {#2}
12    }
13  }
14 }
15 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn
16 {
17   \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {#3} {#1\,=\, #2}
18   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
19   {
20     \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
21     {
22       #1/#2 .code:n =
23       { \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n {#5} }
24     }
25   }
26   {
27     \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
28     {
29       #1/#2 .code:n =
30       {
31         <debug> \typeout{:::::::::fontspec-opentype~#1/#2~=#3/#4/#5}
32         \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {#3} {#4} {#5}
33       }
34     }
35   }
36 }
```

```

#1 : Feature key
\@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnm #2 : Feature option val
#3 : Check feature
#4 : Tag prefix to activate: +#4 = on, -#4 = off.
#5 : Tags to remove in the on case (clist)

37 \cs_new:Nn \@@_feat_off:n {#10ff}
38 \cs_new:Nn \@@_feat_reset:n {#1Reset}

39 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn
40 {
41   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} {#2} {#3} {+#4} {#5}
42   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} { \@@_feat_off:n {#2} } {#3} {-#4}
43   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} { \@@_feat_reset:n {#2} } {} {} {+#4}
44 }

#1 : Feature key
\@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnm #2 : Feature option val
#3 : Check feature
#4 : Exact tag string to activate
#5 : Tags to remove (clist)

45 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn
46 {
47   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5}
48   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} { \@@_feat_reset:n {#2} } {} {} {#4}
49 }

```

1.1 Adding features when loading fonts

When remove clashing features,

1. remove the feature being added (to avoid duplicates);
2. remove the inverse of the feature (to avoid cancellation);
3. finally remove all clashing features.

```

50 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn
51 {
52   <debug> \typeout{:: @@@_make_OT_feature:nnn \exp_not:n { {#1}{#2}{#3} } }
53
54   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_proceed_bool
55   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_check_feat_bool
56
57   \tl_if_empty:nT {#1} { \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_check_feat_bool }
58   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_check_feat_bool
59   {
60     \@@_check_ot_feat:NnF \l_fontspeg_font {#1}
61     {
62       \@@_warning:nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1}
63       \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_proceed_bool
64     }
65   }

```

```

66 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_proceed_bool
67 {
68   \exp_args:Nx \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n
69   { #2 , \@@_swap_plus_minus:n {#2} , #3 }
70
71   \@@_update_featstr:n {#2}
72 }
73 }
74 }
75 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {xxx}
76 \cs_new:Nn \@@_swap_plus_minus:n { \@@_swap_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1 \q_nil }
77 \cs_new:Npn \@@_swap_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1#2 \q_nil
78 { \str_case:nn {#1} { {+} {-#2} {-} {+#2} } }

```

(End definition for \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

\@@_check_script:NnTF This macro takes an OpenType script tag and checks if it exists in the current font. \l_@@_script_int is used to store the number corresponding to the script tag string.

```

79 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_check_script:Nn {TF}
80 {
81   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_never_check_bool
82   { \prg_return_true: }
83   <*XE>
84   {
85     \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nx \l_@@_strnum_int {#2}
86     \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int { \XeTeXOTcountscripts #1 }
87     \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
88     \bool_set_false:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
89     \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
90     {
91       \ifnum \XeTeXOTscripttag #1 \l_tmpa_int = \l_@@_strnum_int
92       \bool_set_true:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
93       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int { \l_tmpb_int }
94     }
95     \else
96     \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
97   }
98   \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
99 }
100 </XE>
101 <*LU>
102 {
103   \@@_ot_validate_tag:x {#2}
104   \cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \font
105   { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {\curr@fontshape/\f@size} }
106   { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {\cs_to_str:N #1} }
107   \directlua{fontspec.check_ot_script("\l_@@_tmp_tl", "#2")}
108   \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
109 }
110 </LU>
111 }

```

(End definition for \@@_check_script:NnTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

\@@_check_lang:NnnTF This macro takes an OpenType language tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script.
 \@@_check_lang:NnTF \l_@@_language_int is used to store the number corresponding to the language tag string.
 The script used is whatever's held in \l_@@_script_int. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'.

```

112 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_check_lang:Nn {TF}
113 {
114   \@@_check_lang:NnnTF #1 {#2} {\l_fontspeg_script_tl} {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
115 }
116 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_check_lang:Nnn {TF}
117 {
118   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_never_check_bool
119   { \prg_return_true: }
120   < *XE >
121   {
122     \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nx \l_@@_strnum_int {#2}
123     \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nx \l_@@_script_int {#3}
124     \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int
125     { \XeTeXOTcountlanguages #1 \l_@@_script_int }
126     \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
127     \bool_set_false:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
128     \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
129     {
130       \ifnum\XeTeXOTlanguagetag #1 \l_@@_script_int \l_tmpa_int = \l_@@_strnum_int
131       \bool_set_true:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
132       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
133     }
134     \else
135       \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
136     \fi
137   }
138   \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
139 }
140 < *LU >
141 {
142   \@@_ot_validate_tag:x {#2}
143   \@@_ot_validate_tag:x {#3}
144   \cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \font
145   { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {\curr@fontshape/\f@size} }
146   { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {\cs_to_str:N #1} }
147   \directlua
148   {
149     fontspec.check_ot_lang( "\l_@@_tmp_tl", "#2", "#3" )
150   }
151   \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
152 }
153 < /LU >
154 }

```

(End definition for \@@_check_lang:NnnTF and \@@_check_lang:NnTF. These functions are documented on page ??.)

`\@@_check_ot_feat:NnTF` This macro takes an OpenType feature tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script/language.

`\@@_check_ot_feat:NnnnTF` `\l_@@_strnum_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the feature tag string. The script used is whatever's held in `\l_@@_script_int`. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'. The language used is `\l_@@_language_int`, by default 0, the 'default language'.

```

155 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_check_ot_feat:Nn {TF,F}
156 {
157   \@@_check_ot_feat:NnnnTF #1 {#2} {\l_fontspeg_lang_tl} {\l_fontspeg_script_tl}
158   {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
159 }

160 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_check_ot_feat:Nnnn {TF,F}
161 {
162   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_never_check_bool
163   { \prg_return_true: }
164   <*XE>
165   {
166     <debug>\typeout{::~ fontspec_check_ot_feat:nnn~ {#2}{#3}{#4}}
167     \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nx \l_@@_strnum_int {#2}
168     \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nx \l_@@_language_int {#3}
169     \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nx \l_@@_script_int {#4}
170     \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int
171     {
172       \XeTeXOTcountfeatures #1
173       \l_@@_script_int
174       \l_@@_language_int
175     }
176     \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
177     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_check_bool
178     \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
179     {
180       \ifnum\XeTeXOTfeaturetag #1 \l_@@_script_int \l_@@_language_int
181       \l_tmpa_int = \l_@@_strnum_int
182       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_check_bool
183       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
184       \else
185       \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
186       \fi
187     }
188     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
189   }
190   </XE>
191   <*LU>
192   {
193     <debug>\typeout{::~ fontspec_check_ot_feat:n~ {#1}}
194     \@@_ot_validate_tag:x {#2}
195     \@@_ot_validate_tag:x {#3}
196     \@@_ot_validate_tag:x {#4}
197     \cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \font
198     { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {\curr@fontshape/\f@size} }
199     { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {\cs_to_str:N #1} }
200     \directlua
201     {

```

```

202         fontspec.check_ot_feat("\l_@@_tmp_tl", "#2", "#3", "#4")
203     }
204     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
205 }
206 </LU>
207 }

```

(End definition for \@@_check_ot_feat:NnTF and \@@_check_ot_feat:NnnnTF. These functions are documented on page ??.)

1.2 OpenType feature information

```

208 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {aalt}{Access-All-Alternates}
209 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {abvf}{Above-base-Forms}
210 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {abvm}{Above-base-Mark-Positioning}
211 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {abvs}{Above-base-Substitutions}
212 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {afrc}{Alternative-Fractions}
213 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {akhn}{Akhands}
214 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {blwf}{Below-base-Forms}
215 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {blwm}{Below-base-Mark-Positioning}
216 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {blws}{Below-base-Substitutions}
217 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {calt}{Contextual-Alternates}
218 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {case}{Case-Sensitive-Forms}
219 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ccmp}{Glyph-Composition~/~Decomposition}
220 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cfar}{Conjunct-Form-After-Ro}
221 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cjct}{Conjunct-Forms}
222 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {clig}{Contextual-Ligatures}
223 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cpct}{Centered-CJK-Punctuation}
224 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cpsp}{Capital-Spacing}
225 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cswl}{Contextual-Swash}
226 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {curs}{Cursive-Positioning}
227 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cvNN}{Character-Variant-~$N$}
228 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {c2pc}{Petite-Capitals-From-Capitals}
229 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {c2sc}{Small-Capitals-From-Capitals}
230 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {dist}{Distances}
231 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {dlig}{Discretionary-Ligatures}
232 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {dnom}{Denominators}
233 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {dtls}{Dotless-Forms}
234 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {expt}{Expert-Forms}
235 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {falt}{Final-Glyph-on-Line-Alternates}
236 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {fin2}{Terminal-Forms-~\#2}
237 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {fin3}{Terminal-Forms-~\#3}
238 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {fina}{Terminal-Forms}
239 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {flac}{Flattened-accent-forms}
240 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {frac}{Fractions}
241 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {fwid}{Full-Widths}
242 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {half}{Half-Forms}
243 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {haln}{Halant-Forms}
244 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {halt}{Alternate-Half-Widths}
245 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {hist}{Historical-Forms}
246 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {hkna}{Horizontal-Kana-Alternates}
247 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {hlig}{Historical-Ligatures}

```

248 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {hngl}{Hangul}
 249 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {hojo}{Hojo~Kanji~Forms}
 250 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {hwid}{Half~Widths}
 251 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {init}{Initial~Forms}
 252 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {isol}{Isolated~Forms}
 253 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ital}{Italics}
 254 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {jalt}{Justification~Alternates}
 255 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {jp78}{JIS78~Forms}
 256 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {jp83}{JIS83~Forms}
 257 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {jp90}{JIS90~Forms}
 258 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {jp04}{JIS2004~Forms}
 259 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {kern}{Kerning}
 260 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {lfbid}{Left~Bounds}
 261 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {liga}{Standard~Ligatures}
 262 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ljmo}{Leading~Jamo~Forms}
 263 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {lnum}{Lining~Figures}
 264 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {locl}{Localized~Forms}
 265 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ltra}{Left-to-right~alternates}
 266 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ltrn}{Left-to-right~mirrored~forms}
 267 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {mark}{Mark~Positioning}
 268 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {med2}{Medial~Forms~\#2}
 269 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {medi}{Medial~Forms}
 270 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {mgrk}{Mathematical~Greek}
 271 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {mkmk}{Mark~to~Mark~Positioning}
 272 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {mset}{Mark~Positioning~via~Substitution}
 273 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {nalt}{Alternate~Annotation~Forms}
 274 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {nlck}{NLC~Kanji~Forms}
 275 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {nukt}{Nukta~Forms}
 276 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {numr}{Numerators}
 277 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {onum}{Oldstyle~Figures}
 278 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {opbd}{Optical~Bounds}
 279 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ordn}{Ordinals}
 280 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ornm}{Ornaments}
 281 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {palt}{Proportional~Alternate~Widths}
 282 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pcap}{Petite~Capitals}
 283 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pkna}{Proportional~Kana}
 284 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pnum}{Proportional~Figures}
 285 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pref}{Pre~Base~Forms}
 286 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pres}{Pre~base~Substitutions}
 287 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pstf}{Post~base~Forms}
 288 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {psts}{Post~base~Substitutions}
 289 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {pwid}{Proportional~Widths}
 290 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {qwid}{Quarter~Widths}
 291 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rand}{Randomize}
 292 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rclt}{Required~Contextual~Alternates}
 293 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rkrf}{Rakar~Forms}
 294 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rlig}{Required~Ligatures}
 295 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rphf}{Reph~Forms}
 296 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rtbd}{Right~Bounds}
 297 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rtla}{Right-to-left~alternates}
 298 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rtlm}{Right-to-left~mirrored~forms}

```

299 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ruby}{Ruby~Notation~Forms}
300 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {rvrn}{Required~Variation~Alternates}
301 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {salt}{Stylistic~Alternates}
302 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {sinf}{Scientific~Inferiors}
303 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {size}{Optical~size}
304 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {smcp}{Small~Capitals}
305 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {smp1}{Simplified~Forms}
306 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ssNN}{Stylistic~Set~$N$}
307 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ssty}{Math-script-style~alternates}
308 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {stch}{Stretching~Glyph~Decomposition}
309 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {subs}{Subscript}
310 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {sup1}{Superscript}
311 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {swsh}{Swash}
312 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {titl}{Titling}
313 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {tjmo}{Trailing~Jamo~Forms}
314 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {tnam}{Traditional~Name~Forms}
315 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {tnum}{Tabular~Figures}
316 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {trad}{Traditional~Forms}
317 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {twid}{Third~Widths}
318 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {unic}{Unicase}
319 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {valt}{Alternate~Vertical~Metrics}
320 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vatu}{Vattu~Variants}
321 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vert}{Vertical~Writing}
322 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vhal}{Alternate~Vertical~Half~Metrics}
323 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vjmo}{Vowel~Jamo~Forms}
324 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vkna}{Vertical~Kana~Alternates}
325 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vkern}{Vertical~Kerning}
326 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vpal}{Proportional~Alternate~Vertical~Metrics}
327 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vrt2}{Vertical~Alternates~and~Rotation}
328 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {vrtr}{Vertical~Alternates~for~Rotation}
329 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {zero}{Slashed~Zero}

```

TODO: move the above elsewhere!!

File XII

fontspec-code-graphite.dtx

1 Graphite/AAT code

`\@@_define_aat_feature_group:n`

```
1 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n
2 {
3   \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat} { #1 .multichoice: }
4 }
```

(End definition for `\@@_define_aat_feature_group:n`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn`

```
5 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn
6 {
7   \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
8   {
9     #1/#2 .code:n = { \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn {#3}{#4} }
10  }
11 }
```

(End definition for `\@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_make_AAT_feature:nn`

```
12 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn
13 {
14   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
15   { \@@_warning:n {aat-feature-not-exist} }
16   {
17     \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:NnnTF \l_fontspec_font {#1}{#2}
18     {
19       \@@_update_featstr:n {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl}
20     }
21     {
22       \@@_warning:nx {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1,#2}
23     }
24   }
25 }
```

(End definition for `\@@_make_AAT_feature:nn`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_make_AAT_feature_string:NnnTF`

This macro takes the numerical codes for a font feature and creates a specified macro containing the string required in the font definition to turn that feature on or off. Used primarily in [...], but also used to check if small caps exists in the requested font (see page 57).

For exclusive selectors, it's easy; just grab the string: For *non*-exclusive selectors, it's a little more complex. If the selector is even, it corresponds to switching the feature on. If the selector is *odd*, it corresponds to switching the feature off. But X_YTeX doesn't return a selector string for this number, since the feature is defined for the 'switching on' value. So we need to

check the selector of the previous number, and then prefix the feature string with ! to denote the switch.

Finally, save out the complete feature string in `\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl`.

```

26 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:Nnn {TF,T,F}
27 {
28   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmpa_tl { \XeTeXfeaturename #1 #2 }
29   \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_tmpa_tl
30   { \prg_return_false: }
31   {
32     \int_compare:nTF { \XeTeXisexclusivefeature #1 #2 > 0 }
33     {
34       \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmpb_tl { \XeTeXselectorname #1 #2 \space #3 }
35     }
36     {
37       \int_if_even:nTF {#3}
38       {
39         \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmpb_tl { \XeTeXselectorname #1 #2 \space #3 }
40       }
41       {
42         \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmpb_tl
43         {
44           \XeTeXselectorname #1 #2 \space \numexpr#3-1\relax
45         }
46         \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_tmpb_tl { \tl_put_left:Nn \l_@@_tmpb_tl {!} }
47       }
48     }
49
50     \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_tmpb_tl
51     { \prg_return_false: }
52     {
53       \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl { \l_@@_tmpa_tl = \l_@@_tmpb_tl }
54       \prg_return_true:
55     }
56   }
57 }

```

(End definition for `\@@_make_AAT_feature_string:NnnTF`. This function is documented on page ??.)

File XIII

fontspec-code-keyval.dtx

1 Font loading (keyval) definitions

This package uses a large number of keyval modules which operate sequentially on keyval input to ensure priority.

```
1 \clist_gset:Nn \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
2 {
3   fontspec, fontspec-opentype, fontspec-aat,
4   fontspec-preparse, fontspec-preparse-cfg, fontspec-preparse-external, fontspec-preparse-n
5   fontspec-renderer
6 }
```

Wrapper function to save some characters in the source:

```
7 \cs_new:Nn \@@_keys_define_code:nnn
8 {
9   \keys_define:nn {#1} { #2 .code:n = {#3} }
10 }
```

For catching features that cannot be used in \addfontfeatures:

```
11 \cs_new:Nn \@@_aff_error:n
12 {
13   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-addfeatures} {#1}
14   { \@@_error:nx {not-in-addfontfeatures} {#1} }
15 }
```

1.1 Pre-pre-parsing stages

These features are extracted from the font feature list before all others.

Don't load font config file

```
16 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-cfg} {IgnoreFontspecFile}
17 {
18   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
19 }
20 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {IgnoreFontspecFile}
21 {
22   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
23 }
```

Path For fonts that aren't installed in the system. If no argument is given, the font is located with `kpsewhich`; it's either in the current directory or the \TeX tree. Otherwise, the argument given defines the file path of the font.

```
24 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Path}
25 {
26   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
27   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_noit_bool
28   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_external_bool
```

```

29 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_font_path_tl {#1}
30 \@@_font_is_file:
31 <*XE>
32 \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
33 </XE>
34 }
35 \aliasfontfeature{Path}{ExternalLocation}
36 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Path} {}

```

(End definition for Path. This function is documented on page ??.)

Extension For fonts that aren't installed in the system. Specifies the font extension to use.

```

37 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {Extension}
38 {
39 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_extension_tl {#1}
40 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_external_bool
41 {
42 \keys_set:nn {fontspec-prepare-external} {Path}
43 }
44 }
45 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_extension_tl
46 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Extension} {}

```

Renderer This feature must be processed before all others (the other font shape and features options are also pre-parsed for convenience) because the renderer determines the format of the features and even whether certain features are available.

```

47 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-renderer}
48 {
49 \Renderer .choices:nn =
50 {AAT,ICU,OpenType,Graphite,Full,Basic}
51 {
52 \int_compare:nTF {\l_keys_choice_int <= 4}
53 {
54 <*XE>
55 \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
56 {
57 \int_case:nn \l_keys_choice_int { 1 {/AAT} 2 {/OT} 3 {/OT} 4 {/GR} }
58 }
59 \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { \l_fontspec_renderer_tl }
60 </XE>
61 <*LU>
62 \@@_warning:nx {only-xetex-feature} {Renderer=AAT/OpenType/Graphite}
63 </LU>
64 }
65 {
66 <*XE>
67 \@@_warning:nx {only-luatex-feature} {Renderer=Full/Basic}
68 </XE>
69 <*LU>
70 \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_mode_tl
71 {

```



```

72         \int_case:nn \l_keys_choice_int { 5 {node} 6 {base} }
73     }
74     \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { mode=\l_fontspec_mode_tl }
75 </LU>
76 }
77 }
78 }

```

1.2 Pre-parsed features

OpenType script/language See later for the resolutions from fontspec features to OpenType definitions.

```

79 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {Script}
80 {
81 <XE> \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
82     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {#1}
83 }

```

Exactly the same:

```

84 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {Language}
85 {
86 <XE> \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
87     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {#1}
88 }

```

TTC font index

```

89 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {FontIndex}
90 {
91     \str_if_eq:eeF { \str_lower_case:f {\l_@@_extension_tl} } {.ttc}
92     { \@@_warning:n {font-index-needs-ttc} }
93 <XE> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {:#1}
94 <LU> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {(#1)}
95 }
96 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontIndex}
97 {
98 <XE> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {:#1}
99 <LU> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {(#1)}
100 }

```

1.3 Font faces

Upright

```

101 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {UprightFont}
102 {
103     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_up_tl {#1}
104 }

```

Italic and slanted

```

105 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ItalicFont}
106 {
107   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
108   {
109     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_noit_bool
110   }
111   {
112     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_noit_bool
113     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_it_tl {#1}
114   }
115 }

116 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {SlantedFont}
117 {
118   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl {#1}
119 }

```

Bold (NFSS) Series By default, fontspec uses the default bold series, `\bfdefault`. We want to be able to make this extensible. This code is not yet functional!

```

120 %\@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSeries}
121 % {
122 %   \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl { #1 }
123 %   \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_bf_series_seq { #1 }
124 % }

```

Bold This contains some stubb code to allow more than one bold font to be loaded.

```

125 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldFont}
126 {
127   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
128   {
129     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
130   }
131   {
132     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
133     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl {#1}
134
135     \seq_if_empty:NT \l_@@_bf_series_seq
136     {
137       \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
138       \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_bf_series_seq {\bfdefault}
139     }
140
141     \tl_if_eq:oxT \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
142     {
143       \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
144     }
145
146     \prop_put:NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
147
148     <debug>\typeout{Setting~bold~font~"\l_@@_curr_bfname_tl"~with~series~"\g_@@_curr_series_tl"}

```

```

149     }
150 }
151 }

```

Bold italic/slanted

```

152 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldItalicFont}
153 {
154   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
155 }
156 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSlantedFont}
157 {
158   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl {#1}
159 }

```

Small caps Small caps isn't pre-parsed because it can vary with others above:

```

160 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFont}
161 {
162   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
163   {
164     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
165   }
166   {
167     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
168     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl {#1}
169   }
170 }

```

1.3.1 Prepared font features

```

171 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {UprightFeatures}
172 {
173   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist {#1}
174 }
175 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldFeatures}
176 {
177   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {#1}
178 }
179 % \prop_put:NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
180 %   {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
181 }
182 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {ItalicFeatures}
183 {
184   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {#1}
185 }
186 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldItalicFeatures}
187 {
188   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {#1}
189 }
190 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SlantedFeatures}
191 {

```

```

192     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist {#1}
193   }
194   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldSlantedFeatures}
195   {
196     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist {#1}
197   }

```

Note that small caps features can vary by shape, so these in fact *aren't* pre-parsed.

```

198   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFeatures}
199   {
200     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
201     {
202       \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist {#1}
203     }
204   }

```

Features varying by size

```

205   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SizeFeatures}
206   {
207     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
208     \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist { SizeFeatures = {#1} }
209   }
210   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {SizeFeatures}
211   {
212     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
213     \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_this_font_tl
214     { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl { -- } } % needs to be non-empty as a flag
215   }
216   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {Font}
217   {
218     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl {#1}
219   }
220   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SizeFeatures}
221   {
222     % dummy
223   }
224   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Font}
225   {
226     % dummy
227   }
228   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Size}
229   {
230     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_size_tl {#1}
231   }
232   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Font}
233   {
234     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_sizedfont_tl {#1}
235   }

```

1.4 General font-independent features

These features can be applied to any font.

NFSS encoding For the very brave.

```

236 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {NFSSEncoding}
237 {
238   \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_nfss_enc_tl { #1 }
239 }

```

NFSS family Interactions with other packages will sometimes require setting the NFSS family explicitly. (By default fontspec auto-generates one based on the font name.)

```

240 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {NFSSFamily}
241 {
242   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl { #1 }
243 }

```

NFSS series/shape This option looks similar in name but has a very different function.

```

244 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontFace}
245 {
246   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_font_tl
247   \clist_set:No \l_@@_arg_clist { \use_iii:nnn #1 }
248   \clist_set_eq:NN \l_@@_this_feat_clist \l_@@_arg_clist
249   \int_compare:N { \clist_count:N \l_@@_arg_clist = 1 }
250   {
251     <debug>\typeout{FontFace~ parsing:~ one~ clist~ item}
252     \tl_if_in:NnF \l_@@_arg_clist {=}
253     {
254       <debug>\typeout{FontFace~ parsing:~ no~ equals~ =>~ font~ name~ only}
255       \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_this_font_tl \l_@@_arg_clist
256       \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_feat_clist
257     }
258   }
259
260   \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn
261   { \use_i:nnn #1 } { \use_ii:nnn #1 } { \l_@@_this_font_tl } { \l_@@_this_feat_clist }
262 }

```

Scale If the input isn't one of the pre-defined string options, then it's gotta be numerical. `\fontspec_calc_scale:n` does all the work in the auto-scaling cases.

```

263 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Scale}
264 {
265   \str_case:nnF {#1}
266   {
267     {MatchLowercase} { \@@_calc_scale:n {5} }
268     {MatchUppercase} { \@@_calc_scale:n {8} }
269   }
270   { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl {#1} }
271   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl { s*[ \l_@@_scale_tl ] }
272 }

```

`\@@_calc_scale:n` This macro calculates the amount of scaling between the default roman font and the (default shape of) the font being selected such that the font dimension that is input is equal for both.

The only font dimensions that justify this are 5 (lowercase height) and 8 (uppercase height in X_{TE}X).

This script is executed for every extra shape, which seems wasteful, but allows alternate italic shapes from a separate font, say, to be loaded and to be auto-scaled correctly. Even if this would be ugly.

To begin, change to `\rmfamily` but use internal commands in case `csermfamily` has been overwritten. (Note that changing `\rmfamily` with `fontspec` resets `\encodingdefault` appropriately.)

```

273 \cs_new:Nn \@@_calc_scale:n
274 {
275   \group_begin:
276
277   \fontencoding { \encodingdefault }
278   \fontfamily { \rmdefault }
279   \selectfont
280
281   \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN \l_@@_tmpa_dim {#1} \font
282   \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN \l_@@_tmpb_dim {#1} \l_fontspec_font
283
284   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl
285   {
286     \fp_eval:n { \dim_to_fp:n {\l_@@_tmpa_dim} /
287                 \dim_to_fp:n {\l_@@_tmpb_dim} }
288   }
289
290   \@@_info:n {set-scale}
291   \exp_args:NNNx
292   \group_end:
293   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl { \l_@@_scale_tl }
294 }

```

(End definition for `\@@_calc_scale:n`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\@@_set_font_dimen:NnN` This function sets the dimension #1 (for font #3) to 'fontdimen' #2 for either font dimension 5 (x-height) or 8 (cap-height). If, for some reason, these return an incorrect 'zero' value (as `\fontdimen8` might for a .tfm font), then we cheat and measure the height of a glyph. We assume in this case that the font contains either an 'X' or an 'x'.

```

295 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN
296 {
297   \dim_set:Nn #1 { \fontdimen #2 #3 }
298   \dim_compare:nNnT #1 = {0pt}
299   {
300     \settoheight #1
301     {
302       \str_if_eq:nnTF {#3} {\font} \rmfamily #3
303       \int_case:nnF #2
304       {
305         {5} {x} % x-height
306         {8} {X} % cap-height
307       } {?} % "else" clause; never reached.
308     }
309   }
310 }

```

```

309     }
310 }

```

(End definition for \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN. This function is documented on page ??.)

Inter-word space These options set the relevant \fontdimens for the font being loaded.

```

311 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {WordSpace}
312 {
313   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
314   { \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,,,\q_stop }
315 }
316 \@@_aff_error:n {WordSpace}

```

_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w This macro determines if the input to WordSpace is of the form {X} or {X,Y,Z} and executes the font scaling. If the former input, it executes {X,X,X}.

```

317 \cs_set:Npn \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,#2,#3,#4 \q_stop
318 {
319   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
320   {
321     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
322     {
323       \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
324       \fontdimen 3 \font = #1 \fontdimen 3 \font
325       \fontdimen 4 \font = #1 \fontdimen 4 \font
326     }
327   }
328   {
329     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
330     {
331       \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
332       \fontdimen 3 \font = #2 \fontdimen 3 \font
333       \fontdimen 4 \font = #3 \fontdimen 4 \font
334     }
335   }
336 }

```

(End definition for _fontspec_parse_wordspace:w. This function is documented on page ??.)

Punctuation space Scaling factor for the nominal \fontdimen#7.

```

337 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {PunctuationSpace}
338 {
339   \str_case_e:nnF {#1}
340   {
341     {WordSpace}
342     {
343       \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
344       { \fontdimen 7 \font = 0 \fontdimen 2 \font }
345     }
346     {TwiceWordSpace}
347     {
348       \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl

```

```

349         { \fontdimen 7 \font = 1 \fontdimen 2 \font }
350     }
351 }
352 {
353     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
354     { \fontdimen 7 \font = #1 \fontdimen 7 \font }
355 }
356 }
357 \@@_aff_error:n {PunctuationSpace}

```

Secret hook into the font-adjustment code

```

358 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontAdjustment}
359 {
360     \tl_put_right:Nx \l_@@_postadjust_tl {#1}
361 }

```

Letterspacing

```

362 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {LetterSpace}
363 {
364     \@@_update_featstr:n {letterspace=#1}
365 }

```

Hyphenation character This feature takes one of three arguments: ‘None’, *⟨glyph⟩*, or *⟨slot⟩*. If the input isn’t the first, and it’s one character, then it’s the second; otherwise, it’s the third.

LuaTeX decouples hyphenation from font settings, so only HyphenChar=None works for that engine.

```

366 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {HyphenChar}
367 {
368     \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {None}
369     {
370         \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
371         { \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn \font {-1} }
372     }
373     {
374         \@@_warning:nx {only-xetex-feature} {HyphenChar}
375
376         \tl_if_single:nTF {#1}
377         { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hyphenchar_tl {`#1} }
378         { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hyphenchar_tl { #1} }
379
380         \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_hyphenchar_tl}
381         {
382             \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
383             { \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn \font { \l_@@_hyphenchar_tl } }
384         }
385         { \@@_error:nx {no-glyph}{#1} }
386     }
387 }
388 }
389 \@@_aff_error:n {HyphenChar}

```


Color Hooks into pkgxcolor, which names its colours \color@<name>.

```

390 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Color}
391 {
392   \cs_if_exist:cTF { \token_to_str:N \color@ #1 }
393   {
394     \convertcolorspec{named}{#1}{HTML}\l_@@_hexcol_tl
395   }
396   {
397     \int_compare:nTF { \tl_count:n {#1} == 6 }
398     { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1} }
399     {
400       \int_compare:nTF { \tl_count:n {#1} == 8 }
401       { \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1 }
402       {
403         \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
404         { \@@_warning:nx {bad-colour} {#1} }
405       }
406     }
407   }
408 }
409 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
410 {
411   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1#2#3#4#5#6}
412   \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \c_@@_opacity_tl
413   {
414     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
415     { \@@_warning:nx {opa-twice-col} {#7#8} }
416   }
417   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_opacity_tl {#7#8}
418 }
419 \aliasfontfeature{Color}{Colour}
420 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Opacity}
421 {
422   \int_set:Nn \l_@@_tmp_int {255}
423   \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn \l_@@_tmp_int { #1 }
424   \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \c_@@_opacity_tl
425   {
426     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
427     { \@@_warning:nx {opa-twice} {#1} }
428   }
429   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_opacity_tl
430   {
431     \int_compare:nT { \l_@@_tmp_int <= "F } {0} % zero pad
432     \int_to_hex:n { \l_@@_tmp_int }
433   }
434 }

```

Mapping

```

435 <*XE>
436 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-aat} {Mapping}

```

```

437 {
438   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl { #1 }
439 }
440 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype} {Mapping}
441 {
442   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl { #1 }
443 }
444 </XE>
445 <*LU>
446 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype} {Mapping}
447 {
448   \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {tex-text}
449   {
450     \@@_warning:n {no-mapping-ligtext}
451     \msg_redirect_name:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtext} {none}
452     \keys_set:nn {fontspec-opentype} { Ligatures=TeX }
453   }
454   { \@@_warning:n {no-mapping} }
455 }
456 </LU>

```

1.4.1 Continuous font axes

```

457 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Weight}
458 {
459   \@@_update_featstr:n{weight=#1}
460 }
461 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Width}
462 {
463   \@@_update_featstr:n{width=#1}
464 }
465 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {OpticalSize}
466 <*XE>
467 {
468   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
469   {
470     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
471   }
472   {
473     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_mm_bool
474     {
475       \@@_update_featstr:n { optical size = #1 }
476     }
477   }
478   \bool_if:nT { !\l_@@_ot_bool && !\l_@@_mm_bool }
479   {
480     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
481     { \@@_warning:n {no-opticals} }
482   }
483 }
484 </XE>
485 <*LU>

```

```

486 {
487   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
488 }
489 \</LU>

```

1.4.2 Font transformations

These are to be specified to apply directly to a font shape:

```

490 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
491 {
492   FakeSlant .code:n =
493   {
494     \@@_update_featstr:n {slant=#1}
495   },
496   FakeSlant .default:n = {0.2}
497 }
498 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
499 {
500   FakeStretch .code:n =
501   {
502     \@@_update_featstr:n {extend=#1}
503   },
504   FakeStretch .default:n = {1.2}
505 }
506 \< *XE>
507 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
508 {
509   FakeBold .code:n =
510   {
511     \@@_update_featstr:n {embolden=#1}
512   },
513   FakeBold .default:n = {1.5}
514 }
515 \< /XE>
516 \< *LU>
517 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
518 {
519   FakeBold .code:n = { \@@_warning:n {fakebold-only-xetex} }
520 }
521 \< /LU>

```

These are to be given to a shape that has no real bold/italic to signal that fontspec should automatically create ‘fake’ shapes.

The behaviour is currently that only if both *AutoFakeSlant* and *AutoFakeBold* are specified, the bold italic is also faked.

These features presently *override* real shapes found in the font; in the future I’d like these features to be ignored in this case, instead. (This is just a bit harder to program in the current design of fontspec.)

```

522 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
523 {
524   AutoFakeSlant .code:n =
525   {

```

```

526 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
527 {
528   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_fake_slant_tl {#1}
529   \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
530   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_it_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
531   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_noit_bool
532
533   \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_fake_embolden_tl
534   {
535     \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
536     {FakeBold=\l_@@_fake_embolden_tl}
537     \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
538     \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
539   }
540 }
541 },
542 AutoFakeSlant .default:n = {0.2}
543 }

```

Same but reversed:

```

544 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
545 {
546   AutoFakeBold .code:n =
547   {
548     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
549     {
550       \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_fake_embolden_tl {#1}
551       \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {FakeBold=#1}
552       \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
553       \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
554
555       \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_fake_slant_tl
556       {
557         \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
558         {FakeSlant=\l_@@_fake_slant_tl}
559         \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeBold=#1}
560         \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
561       }
562     }
563   },
564   AutoFakeBold .default:n = {1.5}
565 }

```

1.4.3 Raw feature string

This allows savvy X_YTeX-ers to input font features manually if they have already memorised the OpenType abbreviations and don't mind not having error checking.

```

566 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype} {RawFeature}
567 {
568   \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}
569 }
570 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-aat} {RawFeature}

```

```
571 {  
572   \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}  
573 }
```

File XIV

fontspec-code-feat-opentype.dtx

1 OpenType feature definitions

```
1 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {salt} { Alternate\,=\,$N$ }
2 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {nalt} { Annotation\,=\,$N$ }
3 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {ornm} { Ornament\,=\,$N$ }
4 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {cvNN} { CharacterVariant\,=\,$N$:$M$ }
5 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {ssNN} { StylisticSet\,=\,$N$ }
```

2 Regular key=val / tag definitions

2.1 Ligatures

```
6 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Ligatures}
7 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Ligatures} {ResetAll} {} {}
8 {
9   +dlig,-dlig,+rlig,-rlig,+liga,-liga,+dlig,-dlig,+clig,-clig,+hlig,-hlig,
10  \langle XE \rangle mapping = tex-text
11  \langle LU \rangle +tlig,-tlig
12 }
13 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Required} {rlig} {rlig} {}
14 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Common} {liga} {liga} {}
15 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Rare} {dlig} {dlig} {}
16 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Discretionary} {dlig} {dlig} {}
17 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Contextual} {clig} {clig} {}
18 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Historic} {hlig} {hlig} {}
```

Emulate CM extra ligatures.

```
19 \langle *XE \rangle
20 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
21 {
22   Ligatures / TeX .code:n = { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl {tex-text} },
23   Ligatures / TeXReset .code:n = { \tl_clear:N \l_@@_mapping_tl },
24 }
25 \rangle XE
26 \langle LU \rangle \@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {TeX} {} { +tlig } {}
```

2.2 Letters

```
27 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Letters}
28 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Letters} {ResetAll} {} {}
29 {
30   +case,+smcp,+pcap,+c2sc,+c2pc,+unic,+rand,
31   -case,-smcp,-pcap,-c2sc,-c2pc,-unic,-rand
32 }
33 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {Uppercase} {case} {case} {+smcp,+pcap,+c2sc,+}
34 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {SmallCaps} {smcp} {smcp} {+pcap,+unic,+rand}
35 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {PetiteCaps} {pcap} {pcap} {+smcp,+unic,+rand}
```

```

36 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {UppercaseSmallCaps} {c2sc} {c2sc} {+c2pc,+uni
37 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {UppercasePetiteCaps} {c2pc} {c2pc} {+c2sc,+un
38 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {Uppercase} {unic} {unic} {+rand}
39 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {Random} {rand} {rand} {+unic}

```

2.3 Numbers

```

40 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Numbers}
41 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Numbers} {ResetAll} {} {}
42 {
43   +tnum,-tnum,
44   +pnum,-pnum,
45   +onum,-onum,
46   +lnum,-lnum,
47   +zero,-zero,
48   +anum,-anum,
49 }
50 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Monospaced} {tnum} {tnum} {+pnum,-pnum}
51 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Proportional} {pnum} {pnum} {+tnum,-tnum}
52 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Lowercase} {onum} {onum} {+lnum,-lnum}
53 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Uppercase} {lnum} {lnum} {+onum,-onum}
54 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {SlashedZero} {zero} {zero} {}
55 \aliasfontfeatureoption {Numbers} {Monospaced} {Tabular}
56 \aliasfontfeatureoption {Numbers} {Lowercase} {OldStyle}
57 \aliasfontfeatureoption {Numbers} {Uppercase} {Lining}

```

luaotload provides a custom anum feature for replacing Latin (AKA Arabic) numbers with Arabic (AKA Indic-Arabic). The same feature maps to Farsi (Persian) numbers if font language is Farsi.

```

58 \LU \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Arabic} {anum} {anum} {}

```

2.4 Vertical position

```

59 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {VerticalPosition}
60 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {ResetAll} {} {}
61 {
62   +supr,-supr,
63   +subs,-subs,
64   +ordn,-ordn,
65   +numr,-numr,
66   +dnom,-dnom,
67   +sinf,-sinf,
68 }
69 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Superior} {supr} {supr} {+
70 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Inferior} {subs} {subs} {+
71 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Ordinal} {ordn} {ordn} {+
72 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Numerator} {numr} {numr} {+
73 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Denominator} {dnom} {dnom} {+
74 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {ScientificInferior} {sinf} {sinf} {+

```

2.5 Contextuals

```

75 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Contextuals}

```

```

76 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Contextuals} {ResetAll} {} {}
77 {
78 +cswl,-cswl,
79 +calt,-calt,
80 +init,-init,
81 +fina,-fina,
82 +falt,-falt,
83 +medi,-medi,
84 }
85 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {Swash} {cswl} {cswl} {}
86 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {Alternate} {calt} {calt} {}
87 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {WordInitial} {init} {init} {}
88 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {WordFinal} {fina} {fina} {}
89 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {LineFinal} {falt} {falt} {}
90 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {Inner} {medi} {medi} {}

```

2.6 Diacritics

```

91 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Diacritics}
92 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Diacritics} {ResetAll} {} {}
93 {
94 +mark,-mark,
95 +mkmk,-mkmk,
96 +abvm,-abvm,
97 +blwm,-blwm,
98 }
99 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {MarkToBase} {mark} {mark} {}
100 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {MarkToMark} {mkmk} {mkmk} {}
101 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {AboveBase} {abvm} {abvm} {}
102 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {BelowBase} {blwm} {blwm} {}

```

2.7 Kerning

```

103 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Kerning}
104 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {ResetAll} {} {}
105 {
106 +csp, -csp,
107 +kern, -kern,
108 }
109 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Kerning} {Uppercase} {csp} {csp} {}
110 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {On} {kern} {+kern} {-kern}
111 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {Off} {kern} {-kern} {+kern}
112 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {Reset} {} {} {+kern, -kern}

```

2.8 Fractions

```

113 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Fractions}
114 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {ResetAll} {} {}
115 {
116 +frac,-frac,
117 +afrc,-afrc,
118 }
119 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {On} {frac} {+frac} {}

```



```

120 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {Off} {frac} {-frac} {}
121 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {Reset} {} {} {+frac,-frac}
122 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Fractions} {Alternate} {afrc} {afrc} {-frac}

```

2.9 Style

```

123 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Style}
124 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Style} {ResetAll} {} {}
125 {
126   +salt,-salt,
127   +ital,-ital,
128   +ruby,-ruby,
129   +swsh,-swsh,
130   +hist,-hist,
131   +titl,-titl,
132   +hkna,-hkna,
133   +vkna,-vkna,
134   +ssty=0,-ssty=0,
135   +ssty=1,-ssty=1,
136 }
137 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Alternate} {salt} {salt} {}
138 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Italic} {ital} {ital} {}
139 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Ruby} {ruby} {ruby} {}
140 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Swash} {swsh} {swsh} {}
141 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Cursive} {swsh} {curs} {}
142 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Historic} {hist} {hist} {}
143 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {TitlingCaps} {titl} {titl} {}
144 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {HorizontalKana} {hkna} {hkna} {+vkna,+pkna}
145 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {VerticalKana} {vkna} {vkna} {+hkna,+pkna}
146 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {ProportionalKana} {pkna} {pkna} {+vkna,+hkna}
147 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Style} {MathScript} {ssty} {+ssty=0} {+ssty=1}
148 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Style} {MathScriptScript} {ssty} {+ssty=1} {+ssty=0}

```

2.10 CJK shape

```

149 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {CJKShape}
150 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {CJKShape} {ResetAll} {} {}
151 {
152   +trad,-trad,
153   +smpl,-smpl,
154   +jp78,-jp78,
155   +jp83,-jp83,
156   +jp90,-jp90,
157   +jp04,-jp04,
158   +expt,-expt,
159   +nlck,-nlck,
160 }
161 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {Traditional} {trad} {trad} {+smpl,+jp78,+jp8
162 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {Simplified} {smpl} {smpl} {+trad,+jp78,+jp8
163 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1978} {jp78} {jp78} {+trad,+smpl,+jp8
164 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1983} {jp83} {jp83} {+trad,+smpl,+jp7
165 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1990} {jp90} {jp90} {+trad,+smpl,+jp7

```

```

166 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS2004} {jp04} {jp04} {+trad,+smpl,+jp7
167 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {Expert} {expt} {expt} {+trad,+smpl,+jp7
168 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {NLC} {nlck} {nlck} {+trad,+smpl,+jp7

```

2.11 Character width

```

169 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {CharacterWidth}
170 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {ResetAll} {} {}
171 {
172 +pwid,-pwid,
173 +fwid,-fwid,
174 +hwid,-hwid,
175 +twid,-twid,
176 +qwid,-qwid,
177 +palt,-palt,
178 +halt,-halt,
179 }
180 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Proportional} {pwid} {pwid} {
181 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Full} {fwid} {fwid} {
182 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Half} {hwid} {hwid} {
183 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Third} {twid} {twid} {
184 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Quarter} {qwid} {qwid} {
185 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateProportional} {palt} {palt} {
186 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateHalf} {halt} {halt} {

```

2.12 Vertical

According to spec vkern must also activate vpal if available but for simplicity we don't do that here (yet?).

```

187 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Vertical}
188 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {RotatedGlyphs} {vrt2} {vrt2} {+vrtr,
189 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {AlternatesForRotation} {vrtr} {vrtr} {+vrt2}
190 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {Alternates} {vert} {vert} {+vrt2}
191 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {KanaAlternates} {vkna} {vkna} {+hkna}
192 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {Kerning} {vkern} {vkern} {}
193 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {AlternateMetrics} {valt} {valt} {+vhal,
194 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {HalfMetrics} {vhal} {vhal} {+valt,
195 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {ProportionalMetrics} {vpal} {vpal} {+valt,

```

3 OpenType features that need numbering

3.1 Alternate

```

196 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Alternate}
197 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
198 {
199 Alternate .default:n = {} ,
200 Alternate / unknown .code:n =
201 {
202 \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
203 { \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {salt}{ +salt = ##1 }{} }

```

```

204     }
205 }
206 <*LU>
207 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
208 {
209     Alternate / Random .code:n =
210     { \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {salt}{ +salt = random }{} } ,
211 }
212 </LU>
213 \aliasfontfeature{Alternate}{StylisticAlternates}

```

3.2 Variant / StylisticSet

```

214 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Variant}
215 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
216 {
217     Variant .default:n = {} ,
218     Variant / unknown .code:n =
219     {
220         \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
221         {
222             \@@_make_OT_feature:xxx { ss \two@digits {##1} } { +ss \two@digits {##1} } {}
223         }
224     }
225 }
226 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}

```

3.3 CharacterVariant

```

227 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {CharacterVariant}
228 \use:x
229 {
230     \cs_new:Npn \exp_not:N \fontspec_parse_cv:w
231     ##1 \c_colon_str ##2 \c_colon_str ##3 \exp_not:N \q_nil
232     {
233         \@@_make_OT_feature:xxx
234         { cv \exp_not:N \two@digits {##1} }
235         { +cv \exp_not:N \two@digits {##1} = ##2 } {}
236     }
237     \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
238     {
239         CharacterVariant / unknown .code:n =
240         {
241             \clist_map_inline:nn {##1}
242             {
243                 \exp_not:N \fontspec_parse_cv:w
244                 #####1 \c_colon_str 0 \c_colon_str \exp_not:N \q_nil
245             }
246         }
247     }
248 }

```

Possibilities: a:0:\q_nil or a:b:0:\q_nil.

3.4 Annotation

```
249 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Annotation}
250 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
251 {
252   Annotation .default:n = {0} ,
253   Annotation / unknown .code:n =
254   {
255     \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {nalt} {+nalt=#1} {}
256   }
257 }
```

3.5 Ornament

```
258 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Ornament}
259 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
260 {
261   Ornament .default:n = {0} ,
262   Ornament / unknown .code:n =
263   {
264     \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {ornm} {+ornm=#1} {}
265   }
266 }
```

4 Script and Language

4.1 Script

```
267 \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Script .choice: }
268 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_new_script:nn
269 {
270   \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Script / #1 .code:n =
271     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_script_exist_bool
272     \clist_map_inline:nn {#2}
273     {
274       \@@_check_script:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {####1}
275       {
276         \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {####1}
277         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
278         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_script_exist_bool
279         \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { script=####1 }
280         \clist_map_break:
281       }
282       { }
283     }
284   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_script_exist_bool
285   {
286     \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {Latin}
287     {
288       \@@_warning:nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
289     }
290   }
```

```

291         \l_fontspec_font {latn}
292         {
293             \l_warning:nx {script-not-exist-latn} {#1}
294             \l_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {latn}
295             \l_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
296         }
297         {
298             \l_warning:nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
299         }
300     }
301 }
302 }
303 }

```

4.2 Language

```

304 \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Language .choice: }
305 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_new_lang:nn
306 {
307     \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Language / #1 .code:n =
308     \l_check_lang:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {#2}
309     {
310         \l_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {#2}
311         \l_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
312         \l_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=#2 }
313     }
314     {
315         \l_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {#1}
316         \keys_set:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Language = Default }
317     }
318 }
319 }

```

Default

```

320 \l_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype}{ Language / Default }
321 {
322     \l_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {DFLT}
323     \l_zero:N \l_@@_language_int
324     \l_gset:Nn \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=DFLT }
325 }

```

Turkish Turns out that many fonts use ‘TUR’ as their Turkish language tag rather than the specified ‘TRK’. So we check for both:

```

326 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
327 {
328     Language / Turkish .code:n =
329     {
330         \l_check_lang:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {TRK}
331         {
332             \l_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
333             \l_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TRK}
334             \l_gset:Nn \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=TRK }

```

```

335     }
336   {
337     \@@_check_lang:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {TUR}
338     {
339       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
340       \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TUR}
341       \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=TUR }
342     }
343     {
344       \@@_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {Turkish}
345       \keys_set:nn {fontspec-opentype} {Language=Default}
346     }
347   }
348 }
349 }

```

TODO: generalise the above

5 Backwards compatibility

```

350 \cs_new:Nn \@@_ot_compat:nn
351 {
352   \aliasfontfeatureoption {#1} {#2Off} {No#2}
353 }
354 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Rare}
355 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Required}
356 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Common}
357 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Discretionary}
358 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Contextual}
359 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Historic}
360 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Numbers} {SlashedZero}
361 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {Swash}
362 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {Alternate}
363 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {WordInitial}
364 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {WordFinal}
365 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {LineFinal}
366 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {Inner}
367 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {MarkToBase}
368 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {MarkToMark}
369 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {AboveBase}
370 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {BelowBase}

```

File XV

fontspec-code-scripts.dtx

1 Font script definitions

```
1 \newfontscript{Adlam}{adlm}
2 \newfontscript{Ahom}{ahom}
3 \newfontscript{Anatolian~Hieroglyphs}{hluw}
4 \newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
5 \newfontscript{Armenian}{armn}
6 \newfontscript{Avestan}{avst}
7 \newfontscript{Balinese}{bali}
8 \newfontscript{Bamum}{bamu}
9 \newfontscript{Bassa~Vah}{bass}
10 \newfontscript{Batak}{batk}
11 \newfontscript{Bengali}{bng2,beng}
12 \newfontscript{Bhaiksuki}{bhks}
13 \newfontscript{Bopomofo}{bopo}
14 \newfontscript{Brahmi}{brah}
15 \newfontscript{Braille}{brai}
16 \newfontscript{Buginese}{bugi}
17 \newfontscript{Buhid}{buhd}
18 \newfontscript{Byzantine~Music}{byzm}
19 \newfontscript{Canadian~Syllabics}{cans}
20 \newfontscript{Carian}{cari}
21 \newfontscript{Caucasian~Albanian}{aghb}
22 \newfontscript{Chakma}{cakm}
23 \newfontscript{Cham}{cham}
24 \newfontscript{Cherokee}{cher}
25 \newfontscript{CJK~Ideographic}{hani}
26 \newfontscript{Coptic}{copt}
27 \newfontscript{Cypriot~Syllabary}{cpri}
28 \newfontscript{Cyrillic}{cyr1}
29 \newfontscript{Default}{DFLT}
30 \newfontscript{Deseret}{dsrt}
31 \newfontscript{Devanagari}{dev2,deva}
32 \newfontscript{Duployan}{dupl}
33 \newfontscript{Egyptian~Hieroglyphs}{egyp}
34 \newfontscript{Elbasan}{elba}
35 \newfontscript{Ethiopic}{ethi}
36 \newfontscript{Georgian}{geor}
37 \newfontscript{Glagolitic}{glag}
38 \newfontscript{Gothic}{goth}
39 \newfontscript{Grantha}{gran}
40 \newfontscript{Greek}{grek}
41 \newfontscript{Gujarati}{gjr2,gujr}
42 \newfontscript{Gurmukhi}{gur2,guru}
43 \newfontscript{Hangul~Jamo}{jamo}
44 \newfontscript{Hangul}{hang}
```

```

45 \newfontscript{Hanunoo}{hano}
46 \newfontscript{Hatran}{hatr}
47 \newfontscript{Hebrew}{hebr}
48 \newfontscript{Hiragana~and~Katakana}{kana}
49 \newfontscript{Imperial~Aramaic}{armi}
50 \newfontscript{Inscriptional~Pahlavi}{phli}
51 \newfontscript{Inscriptional~Parthian}{prti}
52 \newfontscript{Javanese}{java}
53 \newfontscript{Kaithi}{kthi}
54 \newfontscript{Kannada}{knd2,knda}
55 \newfontscript{Kayah~Li}{kali}
56 \newfontscript{Kharosthi}{khar}
57 \newfontscript{Khmer}{khmr}
58 \newfontscript{Khojki}{khoj}
59 \newfontscript{Khudawadi}{sind}
60 \newfontscript{Lao}{lao~}
61 \newfontscript{Latin}{latn}
62 \newfontscript{Lepcha}{lepc}
63 \newfontscript{Limbu}{limb}
64 \newfontscript{Linear~A}{lina}
65 \newfontscript{Linear~B}{linb}
66 \newfontscript{Lisu}{lisu}
67 \newfontscript{Lycian}{lyci}
68 \newfontscript{Lydian}{lydi}
69 \newfontscript{Mahajani}{mahj}
70 \newfontscript{Malayalam}{mlm2,mlym}
71 \newfontscript{Mandaic}{mand}
72 \newfontscript{Manichaeen}{mani}
73 \newfontscript{Marchen}{marc}
74 \newfontscript{Math}{math}
75 \newfontscript{Meitei~Mayek}{mtei}
76 \newfontscript{Mende~Kikakui}{mend}
77 \newfontscript{Meroitic~Cursive}{merc}
78 \newfontscript{Meroitic~Hieroglyphs}{mero}
79 \newfontscript{Miao}{plrd}
80 \newfontscript{Modi}{modi}
81 \newfontscript{Mongolian}{mong}
82 \newfontscript{Mro}{mroo}
83 \newfontscript{Multani}{mult}
84 \newfontscript{Musical~Symbols}{musc}
85 \newfontscript{Myanmar}{mym2,mymr}
86 \newfontscript{N'Ko}{nko~}
87 \newfontscript{Nabataean}{nbat}
88 \newfontscript{Newa}{newa}
89 \newfontscript{Odia}{ory2,orya}
90 \newfontscript{Ogham}{ogam}
91 \newfontscript{Ol~Chiki}{olck}
92 \newfontscript{Old~Italic}{ital}
93 \newfontscript{Old~Hungarian}{hung}
94 \newfontscript{Old~North~Arabian}{narb}
95 \newfontscript{Old~Permic}{perm}

```



```

96 \newfontscript{Old-Persian~Cuneiform}{xpeo}
97 \newfontscript{Old-South-Arabian}{sarb}
98 \newfontscript{Old-Turkic}{orkh}
99 \newfontscript{Osage}{osge}
100 \newfontscript{Osmanya}{osma}
101 \newfontscript{Pahawh-Hmong}{hmnng}
102 \newfontscript{Palmyrene}{palm}
103 \newfontscript{Pau-Cin-Hau}{pauc}
104 \newfontscript{Phags-pa}{phag}
105 \newfontscript{Phoenician}{phnx}
106 \newfontscript{Psalter-Pahlavi}{phlp}
107 \newfontscript{Rejang}{rjng}
108 \newfontscript{Runic}{runr}
109 \newfontscript{Samaritan}{samr}
110 \newfontscript{Saurashtra}{saur}
111 \newfontscript{Sharada}{shrd}
112 \newfontscript{Shavian}{shaw}
113 \newfontscript{Siddham}{sidd}
114 \newfontscript{Sign-Writing}{sgnw}
115 \newfontscript{Sinhala}{sinh}
116 \newfontscript{Sora-Sompeng}{sora}
117 \newfontscript{Sumero-Akkadian~Cuneiform}{xsux}
118 \newfontscript{Sundanese}{sund}
119 \newfontscript{Syloti-Nagri}{sylo}
120 \newfontscript{Syriac}{syr}
121 \newfontscript{Tagalog}{tglg}
122 \newfontscript{Tagbanwa}{tagb}
123 \newfontscript{Tai-Le}{tale}
124 \newfontscript{Tai-Lu}{tal}
125 \newfontscript{Tai-Tham}{lana}
126 \newfontscript{Tai-Viet}{tvt}
127 \newfontscript{Takri}{takr}
128 \newfontscript{Tamil}{tml2,taml}
129 \newfontscript{Tangut}{tang}
130 \newfontscript{Telugu}{tel2,telu}
131 \newfontscript{Thaana}{thaa}
132 \newfontscript{Thai}{thai}
133 \newfontscript{Tibetan}{tib}
134 \newfontscript{Tifinagh}{tfng}
135 \newfontscript{Tirhuta}{tirh}
136 \newfontscript{Ugaritic~Cuneiform}{ugar}
137 \newfontscript{Vai}{vai}
138 \newfontscript{Warang-Citi}{wara}
139 \newfontscript{Yi}{yi}

```

For convenience or backwards compatibility:

```

140 \newfontscript{CJK}{h}
141 \newfontscript{Kana}{kana}
142 \newfontscript{Maths}{math}
143 \newfontscript{N'ko}{nko}
144 \newfontscript{Oriya}{ory2,orya}

```

File XVI

fontspec-code-lang.dtx

1 Font language definitions

```
1 \newfontlanguage{Abaza}{ABA}
2 \newfontlanguage{Abkhazian}{ABK}
3 \newfontlanguage{Adyghe}{ADY}
4 \newfontlanguage{Afrikaans}{AFK}
5 \newfontlanguage{Afar}{AFR}
6 \newfontlanguage{Agaw}{AGW}
7 \newfontlanguage{Altai}{ALT}
8 \newfontlanguage{Amharic}{AMH}
9 \newfontlanguage{Arabic}{ARA}
10 \newfontlanguage{Aari}{ARI}
11 \newfontlanguage{Arakanese}{ARK}
12 \newfontlanguage{Assamese}{ASM}
13 \newfontlanguage{Athapaskan}{ATH}
14 \newfontlanguage{Avar}{AVR}
15 \newfontlanguage{Awadhi}{AWA}
16 \newfontlanguage{Aymara}{AYM}
17 \newfontlanguage{Azeri}{AZE}
18 \newfontlanguage{Badaga}{BAD}
19 \newfontlanguage{Baghelkhandi}{BAG}
20 \newfontlanguage{Balkar}{BAL}
21 \newfontlanguage{Baule}{BAU}
22 \newfontlanguage{Berber}{BBR}
23 \newfontlanguage{Bench}{BCH}
24 \newfontlanguage{Bible~Cree}{BCR}
25 \newfontlanguage{Belarussian}{BEL}
26 \newfontlanguage{Bemba}{BEM}
27 \newfontlanguage{Bengali}{BEN}
28 \newfontlanguage{Bulgarian}{BGR}
29 \newfontlanguage{Bhili}{BHI}
30 \newfontlanguage{Bhojpuri}{BHO}
31 \newfontlanguage{Bikol}{BIK}
32 \newfontlanguage{Bilen}{BIL}
33 \newfontlanguage{Blackfoot}{BKF}
34 \newfontlanguage{Balochi}{BLI}
35 \newfontlanguage{Balante}{BLN}
36 \newfontlanguage{Balti}{BLT}
37 \newfontlanguage{Bambara}{BMB}
38 \newfontlanguage{Bamileke}{BML}
39 \newfontlanguage{Breton}{BRE}
40 \newfontlanguage{Brahui}{BRH}
41 \newfontlanguage{Braj~Bhasha}{BRI}
42 \newfontlanguage{Burmese}{BRM}
43 \newfontlanguage{Bashkir}{BSH}
44 \newfontlanguage{Beti}{BTI}
```

45 \newfontlanguage{Catalan}{CAT}
 46 \newfontlanguage{Cebuano}{CEB}
 47 \newfontlanguage{Chechen}{CHE}
 48 \newfontlanguage{Chaha~Gurage}{CHG}
 49 \newfontlanguage{Chattisgarhi}{CHH}
 50 \newfontlanguage{Chichewa}{CHI}
 51 \newfontlanguage{Chukchi}{CHK}
 52 \newfontlanguage{Chipewyan}{CHP}
 53 \newfontlanguage{Cherokee}{CHR}
 54 \newfontlanguage{Chuvash}{CHU}
 55 \newfontlanguage{Comorian}{CMR}
 56 \newfontlanguage{Coptic}{COP}
 57 \newfontlanguage{Cree}{CRE}
 58 \newfontlanguage{Carrier}{CRR}
 59 \newfontlanguage{Crimean~Tatar}{CRT}
 60 \newfontlanguage{Church~Slavonic}{CSL}
 61 \newfontlanguage{Czech}{CSY}
 62 \newfontlanguage{Danish}{DAN}
 63 \newfontlanguage{Dargwa}{DAR}
 64 \newfontlanguage{Woods~Cree}{DCR}
 65 \newfontlanguage{German}{DEU}
 66 \newfontlanguage{Dogri}{DGR}
 67 \newfontlanguage{Divehi}{DIV}
 68 \newfontlanguage{Djerma}{DJR}
 69 \newfontlanguage{Dangme}{DNG}
 70 \newfontlanguage{Dinka}{DNK}
 71 \newfontlanguage{Dungan}{DUN}
 72 \newfontlanguage{Dzongkha}{DZN}
 73 \newfontlanguage{Ebira}{EBI}
 74 \newfontlanguage{Eastern~Cree}{ECR}
 75 \newfontlanguage{Edo}{EDO}
 76 \newfontlanguage{Efik}{EFI}
 77 \newfontlanguage{Greek}{ELL}
 78 \newfontlanguage{English}{ENG}
 79 \newfontlanguage{Erzya}{ERZ}
 80 \newfontlanguage{Spanish}{ESP}
 81 \newfontlanguage{Estonian}{ETI}
 82 \newfontlanguage{Basque}{EUQ}
 83 \newfontlanguage{Evenki}{EVK}
 84 \newfontlanguage{Even}{EVN}
 85 \newfontlanguage{Ewe}{EWE}
 86 \newfontlanguage{French~Antillean}{FAN}
 87 \newfontlanguage{Farsi}{FAR}
 88 \newfontlanguage{Parsi}{FAR}
 89 \newfontlanguage{Persian}{FAR}
 90 \newfontlanguage{Finnish}{FIN}
 91 \newfontlanguage{Fijian}{FJI}
 92 \newfontlanguage{Flemish}{FLE}
 93 \newfontlanguage{Forest~Nenets}{FNE}
 94 \newfontlanguage{Fon}{FON}
 95 \newfontlanguage{Faroese}{FOS}

96 \newfontlanguage{French}{FRA}
 97 \newfontlanguage{Frisian}{FRI}
 98 \newfontlanguage{Friulian}{FRL}
 99 \newfontlanguage{Futa}{FTA}
 100 \newfontlanguage{Fulani}{FUL}
 101 \newfontlanguage{Ga}{GAD}
 102 \newfontlanguage{Gaelic}{GAE}
 103 \newfontlanguage{Gagauz}{GAG}
 104 \newfontlanguage{Galician}{GAL}
 105 \newfontlanguage{Garshuni}{GAR}
 106 \newfontlanguage{Garhwali}{GAW}
 107 \newfontlanguage{Ge'ez}{GEZ}
 108 \newfontlanguage{Gilyak}{GIL}
 109 \newfontlanguage{Gumuz}{GMZ}
 110 \newfontlanguage{Gondi}{GON}
 111 \newfontlanguage{Greenlandic}{GRN}
 112 \newfontlanguage{Garó}{GRO}
 113 \newfontlanguage{Guarani}{GUA}
 114 \newfontlanguage{Gujarati}{GUJ}
 115 \newfontlanguage{Haitian}{HAI}
 116 \newfontlanguage{Halam}{HAL}
 117 \newfontlanguage{Harauti}{HAR}
 118 \newfontlanguage{Hausa}{HAU}
 119 \newfontlanguage{Hawaii}{HAW}
 120 \newfontlanguage{Hammer-Banna}{HBN}
 121 \newfontlanguage{Hiligaynon}{HIL}
 122 \newfontlanguage{Hindi}{HIN}
 123 \newfontlanguage{High-Mari}{HMA}
 124 \newfontlanguage{Hindko}{HND}
 125 \newfontlanguage{Ho}{HO}
 126 \newfontlanguage{Harari}{HRI}
 127 \newfontlanguage{Croatian}{HRV}
 128 \newfontlanguage{Hungarian}{HUN}
 129 \newfontlanguage{Armenian}{HYE}
 130 \newfontlanguage{Igbo}{IBO}
 131 \newfontlanguage{Ijo}{IJO}
 132 \newfontlanguage{Ilokano}{ILO}
 133 \newfontlanguage{Indonesian}{IND}
 134 \newfontlanguage{Ingush}{ING}
 135 \newfontlanguage{Inuktitut}{INU}
 136 \newfontlanguage{Irish}{IRI}
 137 \newfontlanguage{Irish-Traditional}{IRT}
 138 \newfontlanguage{Icelandic}{ISL}
 139 \newfontlanguage{Inari-Sami}{ISM}
 140 \newfontlanguage{Italian}{ITA}
 141 \newfontlanguage{Hebrew}{IWR}
 142 \newfontlanguage{Javanese}{JAV}
 143 \newfontlanguage{Yiddish}{JII}
 144 \newfontlanguage{Japanese}{JAN}
 145 \newfontlanguage{Judezmo}{JUD}
 146 \newfontlanguage{Jula}{JUL}

¹⁴⁷ \newfontlanguage{Kabardian}{KAB}
¹⁴⁸ \newfontlanguage{Kachchi}{KAC}
¹⁴⁹ \newfontlanguage{Kalenjin}{KAL}
¹⁵⁰ \newfontlanguage{Kannada}{KAN}
¹⁵¹ \newfontlanguage{Karachay}{KAR}
¹⁵² \newfontlanguage{Georgian}{KAT}
¹⁵³ \newfontlanguage{Kazakh}{KAZ}
¹⁵⁴ \newfontlanguage{Kebena}{KEB}
¹⁵⁵ \newfontlanguage{Khutsuri~Georgian}{KGE}
¹⁵⁶ \newfontlanguage{Khakass}{KHA}
¹⁵⁷ \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Kazim}{KHK}
¹⁵⁸ \newfontlanguage{Khmer}{KHM}
¹⁵⁹ \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Shurishkar}{KHS}
¹⁶⁰ \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Vakhi}{KHV}
¹⁶¹ \newfontlanguage{Khowar}{KHW}
¹⁶² \newfontlanguage{Kikuyu}{KIK}
¹⁶³ \newfontlanguage{Kirghiz}{KIR}
¹⁶⁴ \newfontlanguage{Kisii}{KIS}
¹⁶⁵ \newfontlanguage{Kokni}{KKN}
¹⁶⁶ \newfontlanguage{Kalmyk}{KLM}
¹⁶⁷ \newfontlanguage{Kamba}{KMB}
¹⁶⁸ \newfontlanguage{Kumaoni}{KMN}
¹⁶⁹ \newfontlanguage{Komo}{KMO}
¹⁷⁰ \newfontlanguage{Komso}{KMS}
¹⁷¹ \newfontlanguage{Kanuri}{KNR}
¹⁷² \newfontlanguage{Kodagu}{KOD}
¹⁷³ \newfontlanguage{Korean~Old~Hangul}{KOH}
¹⁷⁴ \newfontlanguage{Konkani}{KOK}
¹⁷⁵ \newfontlanguage{Kikongo}{KON}
¹⁷⁶ \newfontlanguage{Komi-Permyak}{KOP}
¹⁷⁷ \newfontlanguage{Korean}{KOR}
¹⁷⁸ \newfontlanguage{Komi-Zyrian}{KOZ}
¹⁷⁹ \newfontlanguage{Kpelle}{KPL}
¹⁸⁰ \newfontlanguage{Krio}{KRI}
¹⁸¹ \newfontlanguage{Karakalpak}{KRR}
¹⁸² \newfontlanguage{Karelian}{KRL}
¹⁸³ \newfontlanguage{Karaim}{KRM}
¹⁸⁴ \newfontlanguage{Karen}{KRN}
¹⁸⁵ \newfontlanguage{Koorete}{KRT}
¹⁸⁶ \newfontlanguage{Kashmiri}{KSH}
¹⁸⁷ \newfontlanguage{Khasi}{KSI}
¹⁸⁸ \newfontlanguage{Kildin-Sami}{KSM}
¹⁸⁹ \newfontlanguage{Kui}{KUI}
¹⁹⁰ \newfontlanguage{Kulvi}{KUL}
¹⁹¹ \newfontlanguage{Kumyk}{KUM}
¹⁹² \newfontlanguage{Kurdish}{KUR}
¹⁹³ \newfontlanguage{Kurukh}{KUU}
¹⁹⁴ \newfontlanguage{Kuy}{KUY}
¹⁹⁵ \newfontlanguage{Koryak}{KYK}
¹⁹⁶ \newfontlanguage{Ladin}{LAD}
¹⁹⁷ \newfontlanguage{Lahuli}{LAH}

198 \newfontlanguage{Lak}{LAK}
 199 \newfontlanguage{Lambani}{LAM}
 200 \newfontlanguage{Lao}{LAO}
 201 \newfontlanguage{Latin}{LAT}
 202 \newfontlanguage{Laz}{LAZ}
 203 \newfontlanguage{L-Cree}{LCR}
 204 \newfontlanguage{Ladakhi}{LDK}
 205 \newfontlanguage{Lezgi}{LEZ}
 206 \newfontlanguage{Lingala}{LIN}
 207 \newfontlanguage{Low-Mari}{LMA}
 208 \newfontlanguage{Limbu}{LMB}
 209 \newfontlanguage{Lomwe}{LMW}
 210 \newfontlanguage{Lower-Sorbian}{LSB}
 211 \newfontlanguage{Lule-Sami}{LSM}
 212 \newfontlanguage{Lithuanian}{LTH}
 213 \newfontlanguage{Luba}{LUB}
 214 \newfontlanguage{Luganda}{LUG}
 215 \newfontlanguage{Luhya}{LUH}
 216 \newfontlanguage{Luo}{LUO}
 217 \newfontlanguage{Latvian}{LVI}
 218 \newfontlanguage{Majang}{MAJ}
 219 \newfontlanguage{Makua}{MAK}
 220 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam-Traditional}{MAL}
 221 \newfontlanguage{Mansi}{MAN}
 222 \newfontlanguage{Marathi}{MAR}
 223 \newfontlanguage{Marwari}{MAW}
 224 \newfontlanguage{Mbundu}{MBN}
 225 \newfontlanguage{Manchu}{MCH}
 226 \newfontlanguage{Moose-Cree}{MCR}
 227 \newfontlanguage{Mende}{MDE}
 228 \newfontlanguage{Me'en}{MEN}
 229 \newfontlanguage{Mizo}{MIZ}
 230 \newfontlanguage{Macedonian}{MKD}
 231 \newfontlanguage{Male}{MLE}
 232 \newfontlanguage{Malagasy}{MLG}
 233 \newfontlanguage{Malinke}{MLN}
 234 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam-Reformed}{MLR}
 235 \newfontlanguage{Malay}{MLY}
 236 \newfontlanguage{Mandinka}{MND}
 237 \newfontlanguage{Mongolian}{MNG}
 238 \newfontlanguage{Manipuri}{MNI}
 239 \newfontlanguage{Maninka}{MNK}
 240 \newfontlanguage{Manx-Gaelic}{MNX}
 241 \newfontlanguage{Moksha}{MOK}
 242 \newfontlanguage{Moldavian}{MOL}
 243 \newfontlanguage{Mon}{MON}
 244 \newfontlanguage{Moroccan}{MOR}
 245 \newfontlanguage{Maori}{MRI}
 246 \newfontlanguage{Maithili}{MTH}
 247 \newfontlanguage{Maltese}{MTS}
 248 \newfontlanguage{Mundari}{MUN}

249 \newfontlanguage{Naga-Assamese}{NAG}
 250 \newfontlanguage{Nanai}{NAN}
 251 \newfontlanguage{Naskapi}{NAS}
 252 \newfontlanguage{N-Cree}{NCR}
 253 \newfontlanguage{Ndebele}{NDB}
 254 \newfontlanguage{Ndonga}{NDG}
 255 \newfontlanguage{Nepali}{NEP}
 256 \newfontlanguage{Newari}{NEW}
 257 \newfontlanguage{Nagari}{NGR}
 258 \newfontlanguage{Norway-House-Cree}{NHC}
 259 \newfontlanguage{Nisi}{NIS}
 260 \newfontlanguage{Niuean}{NIU}
 261 \newfontlanguage{Nkole}{NKL}
 262 \newfontlanguage{N'ko}{NKO}
 263 \newfontlanguage{Dutch}{NLD}
 264 \newfontlanguage{Nogai}{NOG}
 265 \newfontlanguage{Norwegian}{NOR}
 266 \newfontlanguage{Northern-Sami}{NSM}
 267 \newfontlanguage{Northern-Tai}{NTA}
 268 \newfontlanguage{Esperanto}{NTO}
 269 \newfontlanguage{Nynorsk}{NYN}
 270 \newfontlanguage{Oji-Cree}{OCR}
 271 \newfontlanguage{Ojibway}{OBJ}
 272 \newfontlanguage{Oriya}{ORI}
 273 \newfontlanguage{Oromo}{ORO}
 274 \newfontlanguage{Ossetian}{OSS}
 275 \newfontlanguage{Palestinian-Aramaic}{PAA}
 276 \newfontlanguage{Pali}{PAL}
 277 \newfontlanguage{Punjabi}{PAN}
 278 \newfontlanguage{Palpa}{PAP}
 279 \newfontlanguage{Pashto}{PAS}
 280 \newfontlanguage{Polytonic-Greek}{PGR}
 281 \newfontlanguage{Pilipino}{PIL}
 282 \newfontlanguage{Palaung}{PLG}
 283 \newfontlanguage{Polish}{PLK}
 284 \newfontlanguage{Provençal}{PRO}
 285 \newfontlanguage{Portuguese}{PTG}
 286 \newfontlanguage{Chin}{QIN}
 287 \newfontlanguage{Rajasthani}{RAJ}
 288 \newfontlanguage{R-Cree}{RCR}
 289 \newfontlanguage{Russian-Buriat}{RBU}
 290 \newfontlanguage{Riang}{RIA}
 291 \newfontlanguage{Rhaeto-Romanic}{RMS}
 292 \newfontlanguage{Romanian}{ROM}
 293 \newfontlanguage{Romany}{ROY}
 294 \newfontlanguage{Rusyn}{RSY}
 295 \newfontlanguage{Ruanda}{RUA}
 296 \newfontlanguage{Russian}{RUS}
 297 \newfontlanguage{Sadri}{SAD}
 298 \newfontlanguage{Sanskrit}{SAN}
 299 \newfontlanguage{Santali}{SAT}

300 \newfontlanguage{Sayisi}{SAY}
 301 \newfontlanguage{Sekota}{SEK}
 302 \newfontlanguage{Selkup}{SEL}
 303 \newfontlanguage{Sango}{SGO}
 304 \newfontlanguage{Shan}{SHN}
 305 \newfontlanguage{Sibe}{SIB}
 306 \newfontlanguage{Sidamo}{SID}
 307 \newfontlanguage{Silte~Gurage}{SIG}
 308 \newfontlanguage{Skolt~Sami}{SKS}
 309 \newfontlanguage{Slovak}{SKY}
 310 \newfontlanguage{Slavey}{SLA}
 311 \newfontlanguage{Slovenian}{SLV}
 312 \newfontlanguage{Somali}{SML}
 313 \newfontlanguage{Samoan}{SMO}
 314 \newfontlanguage{Sena}{SNA}
 315 \newfontlanguage{Sindhi}{SND}
 316 \newfontlanguage{Sinhalese}{SNH}
 317 \newfontlanguage{Soninke}{SNK}
 318 \newfontlanguage{Sodo~Gurage}{SOG}
 319 \newfontlanguage{Sotho}{SOT}
 320 \newfontlanguage{Albanian}{SQI}
 321 \newfontlanguage{Serbian}{SRB}
 322 \newfontlanguage{Saraiki}{SRK}
 323 \newfontlanguage{Serer}{SRR}
 324 \newfontlanguage{South~Slavey}{SSL}
 325 \newfontlanguage{Southern~Sami}{SSM}
 326 \newfontlanguage{Suri}{SUR}
 327 \newfontlanguage{Svan}{SVA}
 328 \newfontlanguage{Swedish}{SVE}
 329 \newfontlanguage{Swadaya~Aramaic}{SWA}
 330 \newfontlanguage{Swahili}{SWK}
 331 \newfontlanguage{Swazi}{SWZ}
 332 \newfontlanguage{Sutu}{SXT}
 333 \newfontlanguage{Syriac}{SYR}
 334 \newfontlanguage{Tabasaran}{TAB}
 335 \newfontlanguage{Tajiki}{TAJ}
 336 \newfontlanguage{Tamil}{TAM}
 337 \newfontlanguage{Tatar}{TAT}
 338 \newfontlanguage{TH~Cree}{TCR}
 339 \newfontlanguage{Telugu}{TEL}
 340 \newfontlanguage{Tongan}{TGN}
 341 \newfontlanguage{Tigre}{TGR}
 342 \newfontlanguage{Tigrinya}{TGY}
 343 \newfontlanguage{Thai}{THA}
 344 \newfontlanguage{Tahitian}{THT}
 345 \newfontlanguage{Tibetan}{TIB}
 346 \newfontlanguage{Turkmen}{TKM}
 347 \newfontlanguage{Temne}{TMN}
 348 \newfontlanguage{Tswana}{TNA}
 349 \newfontlanguage{Tundra~Nenets}{TNE}
 350 \newfontlanguage{Tonga}{TNG}


```

351 \newfontlanguage{Todo}{TOD}
352 \newfontlanguage{Tsonga}{TSG}
353 \newfontlanguage{Turoyo~Aramaic}{TUA}
354 \newfontlanguage{Tulu}{TUL}
355 \newfontlanguage{Tuvini}{TUV}
356 \newfontlanguage{Twini}{TWI}
357 \newfontlanguage{Udmurt}{UDM}
358 \newfontlanguage{Ukrainian}{UKR}
359 \newfontlanguage{Urdu}{URD}
360 \newfontlanguage{Upper~Sorbian}{USB}
361 \newfontlanguage{Uyghur}{UYG}
362 \newfontlanguage{Uzbek}{UZB}
363 \newfontlanguage{Venda}{VEN}
364 \newfontlanguage{Vietnamese}{VIT}
365 \newfontlanguage{Wa}{WA}
366 \newfontlanguage{Wagdi}{WAG}
367 \newfontlanguage{West~Cree}{WCR}
368 \newfontlanguage{Welsh}{WEL}
369 \newfontlanguage{Wolof}{WLF}
370 \newfontlanguage{Tai~Lue}{XBD}
371 \newfontlanguage{Xhosa}{XHS}
372 \newfontlanguage{Yakut}{YAK}
373 \newfontlanguage{Yoruba}{YBA}
374 \newfontlanguage{Y~Cree}{YCR}
375 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Classic}{YIC}
376 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Modern}{YIM}
377 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Hong~Kong}{ZHH}
378 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Phonetic}{ZHP}
379 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Simplified}{ZHS}
380 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Traditional}{ZHT}
381 \newfontlanguage{Zande}{ZND}
382 \newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}

```

File XVII

fontspec-code-feat-aat.dtx

1 AAT feature definitions

These are only defined for X_YTeX.

1.1 Ligatures

```
1 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Ligatures}
2 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Required} {1} {0}
3 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoRequired} {1} {1}
4 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Common} {1} {2}
5 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoCommon} {1} {3}
6 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Rare} {1} {4}
7 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoRare} {1} {5}
8 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Discretionary} {1} {4}
9 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoDiscretionary} {1} {5}
10 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Logos} {1} {6}
11 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoLogos} {1} {7}
12 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Rebus} {1} {8}
13 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoRebus} {1} {9}
14 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Diphthong} {1} {10}
15 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoDiphthong} {1} {11}
16 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Squared} {1} {12}
17 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoSquared} {1} {13}
18 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {AbbrevSquared} {1} {14}
19 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoAbbrevSquared} {1} {15}
20 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Icelandic} {1} {32}
21 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoIcelandic} {1} {33}
```

Emulate CM extra ligatures.

```
22 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
23 {
24   Ligatures / TeX .code:n =
25   {
26     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl { tex-text }
27   }
28 }
```

1.2 Letters

```
29 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Letters}
30 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {Normal} {3} {0}
31 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {Uppercase} {3} {1}
32 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {Lowercase} {3} {2}
33 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {SmallCaps} {3} {3}
34 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {InitialCaps} {3} {4}
```

1.3 Numbers

These were originally separated into NumberCase and NumberSpacing following AAT, but it makes more sense to combine them.

Both naming conventions are offered to select the number case.

```
35 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Numbers}
36 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Monospaced} {6} {0}
37 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Proportional} {6} {1}
38 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Lowercase} {21} {0}
39 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {OldStyle} {21} {0}
40 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Uppercase} {21} {1}
41 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Lining} {21} {1}
42 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {SlashedZero} {14} {5}
43 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {NoSlashedZero} {14} {4}
```

1.4 Contextuals

```
44 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Contextuals}
45 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {WordInitial} {8} {0}
46 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoWordInitial} {8} {1}
47 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {WordFinal} {8} {2}
48 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoWordFinal} {8} {3}
49 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {LineInitial} {8} {4}
50 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoLineInitial} {8} {5}
51 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {LineFinal} {8} {6}
52 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoLineFinal} {8} {7}
53 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {Inner} {8} {8}
54 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoInner} {8} {9}
```

1.5 Diacritics

```
55 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Diacritics}
56 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Diacritics} {Show} {9} {0}
57 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Diacritics} {Hide} {9} {1}
58 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Diacritics} {Decompose} {9} {2}
```

1.6 Vertical position

```
59 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {VerticalPosition}
60 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {VerticalPosition} {Normal} {10} {0}
61 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {VerticalPosition} {Superior} {10} {1}
62 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {VerticalPosition} {Inferior} {10} {2}
63 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {VerticalPosition} {Ordinal} {10} {3}
```

1.7 Fractions

```
64 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Fractions}
65 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Fractions} {On} {11} {1}
66 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Fractions} {Off} {11} {0}
67 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Fractions} {Diagonal} {11} {2}
```

1.8 Alternate

```
68 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n { Alternate }
```

```

69 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
70 {
71   Alternate .default:n = {0} ,
72   Alternate / unknown .code:n =
73   {
74     \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
75     {
76       \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn {17}{##1}
77     }
78   }
79 }

```

1.9 Variant / StylisticSet

```

80 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Variant}
81 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
82 {
83   Variant .default:n = {0} ,
84   Variant / unknown .code:n =
85   {
86     \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
87     { \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn {18}{##1} }
88   }
89 }
90 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}
91 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Vertical}
92 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
93 {
94   Vertical .choice: ,
95   Vertical / RotatedGlyphs .code:n =
96   {
97     \__fontspec_update_featstr:n {vertical}
98   }
99 }

```

1.10 Style

```

100 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Style}
101 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Style} {Italic} {32} {2}
102 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Style} {Ruby} {28} {2}
103 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Style} {Display} {19} {1}
104 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Style} {Engraved} {19} {2}
105 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Style} {TitlingCaps} {19} {4}
106 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Style} {TallCaps} {19} {5}

```

1.11 CJK shape

```

107 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {CJKShape}
108 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {Traditional} {20} {0}
109 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {Simplified} {20} {1}
110 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1978} {20} {2}
111 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1983} {20} {3}
112 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1990} {20} {4}

```

```

113 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {Expert} {20} {10}
114 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {NLC} {20} {13}

```

1.12 Character width

```

115 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {CharacterWidth}
116 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Proportional} {22} {0}
117 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Full} {22} {1}
118 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Half} {22} {2}
119 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Third} {22} {3}
120 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Quarter} {22} {4}
121 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateProportional} {22} {5}
122 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateHalf} {22} {6}
123 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Default} {22} {7}

```

1.13 Annotation

```

124 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Annotation}
125 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Off} {24} {0}
126 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Box} {24} {1}
127 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {RoundedBox} {24} {2}
128 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Circle} {24} {3}
129 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {BlackCircle} {24} {4}
130 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Parenthesis} {24} {5}
131 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Period} {24} {6}
132 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {RomanNumerals} {24} {7}
133 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Diamond} {24} {8}
134 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {BlackSquare} {24} {9}
135 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {BlackRoundSquare} {24} {10}
136 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {DoubleCircle} {24} {11}

```

File XVIII

fontspec-code-enc.dtx

1 Extended font encodings

To be removed after the 2017 release of LaTeX2e:

```
1 \providecommand\UnicodeFontFile[2]{"[#1]:#2"}
2 \providecommand\UnicodeFontName[2]{"#1:#2"}
3 \langle XE \rangle \providecommand\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures[mapping=tex-text;]
4 \langle LU \rangle \providecommand\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures[+tlig;]
5 \providecommand\add@unicode@accent[2]{#2\char#1\relax}
6 \providecommand\DeclareUnicodeAccent[3]{%
7   \DeclareTextCommand{#1}{#2}{\add@unicode@accent{#3}}}%
8 }
```

`\EncodingCommand`

```
9 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingCommand {m0{m}}
10 {
11   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
12   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingCommand }
13   \DeclareTextCommand{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}{#3}
14 }
```

(End definition for \EncodingCommand. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\EncodingAccent`

```
15 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingAccent {mm}
16 {
17   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
18   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingAccent }
19   \DeclareTextCommand{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{\add@unicode@accent{#2}}
20 }
```

(End definition for \EncodingAccent. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\EncodingSymbol`

```
21 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingSymbol {mm}
22 {
23   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
24   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingSymbol }
25   \DeclareTextSymbol{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}
26 }
```

(End definition for \EncodingSymbol. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\EncodingComposite`

```
27 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingComposite {mmm}
28 {
29   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
30   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingComposite }
```

```

31 \DeclareTextComposite{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}{#3}
32 }

```

(End definition for \EncodingComposite. This function is documented on page ??.)

\EncodingCompositeCommand

```

33 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingCompositeCommand {mmm}
34 {
35   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
36   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingCompositeCommand }
37   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}{#3}
38 }

```

(End definition for \EncodingCompositeCommand. This function is documented on page ??.)

\DeclareUnicodeEncoding

```

39 \DeclareDocumentCommand \DeclareUnicodeEncoding {mm}
40 {
41   \DeclareFontEncoding{#1}{}{}
42   \DeclareErrorFont{#1}{lrm}{m}{n}{10}
43   \DeclareFontSubstitution{#1}{lrm}{m}{n}
44   \DeclareFontFamily{#1}{lrm}{}
45
46   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lrm}{m}{n}
47     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-regular}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
48   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lrm}{m}{it}
49     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-italic}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
50   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lrm}{m}{sc}
51     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmromancaps10-regular}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
52   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lrm}{bx}{n}
53     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-bold}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
54   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lrm}{bx}{it}
55     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-bolditalic}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
56
57   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_prev_unicode_name_tl \UnicodeEncodingName
58   \tl_set:Nn \UnicodeEncodingName {#1}
59   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
60   #2
61   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
62   \tl_set_eq:NN \UnicodeEncodingName \l_@@_prev_unicode_name_tl
63 }

```

(End definition for \DeclareUnicodeEncoding. This function is documented on page ??.)

\UndeclareSymbol Synonyms for each other but all included for completeness.

\UndeclareAccent 64 \DeclareDocumentCommand \UndeclareSymbol {m}

```

65 {
66   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
67   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \UndeclareSymbol }
68   \UndeclareTextCommand {#1} {\UnicodeEncodingName}
69 }
70 \DeclareDocumentCommand \UndeclareAccent {m}

```

```

71 {
72   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
73   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \UndeclareAccent }
74   \UndeclareTextCommand {#1} {\UnicodeEncodingName}
75 }
76 \DeclareDocumentCommand \UndeclareCommand {m}
77 {
78   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
79   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \UndeclareCommand }
80   \UndeclareTextCommand {#1} {\UnicodeEncodingName}
81 }

```

(End definition for \UndeclareSymbol, \UndeclareAccent, and \UndeclareCommand. These functions are documented on page ??.)

\UndeclareComposite

```

82 \DeclareDocumentCommand \UndeclareComposite {mm}
83 {
84   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
85   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \UndeclareComposite }
86   \cs_undefine:c
87   { \c_backslash_str \UnicodeEncodingName \token_to_str:N #1 - \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
88 }

```

(End definition for \UndeclareComposite. This function is documented on page ??.)

File XIX

fontspec-code-math.dtx

1 Selecting maths fonts

Here, the fonts used in math mode are redefined to correspond to the default roman, sans serif and typewriter fonts. Unfortunately, you can only define maths fonts in the preamble, otherwise I'd run this code whenever `\setmainfont` and friends was run.

`\fontspec_setup_maths:` Everything here is performed `\AtBeginDocument` in order to overwrite euler's attempt. This means fontspec must be loaded *after* euler. We set up a conditional to return an error if this rule is violated.

Since every maths setup is slightly different, we also take different paths for defining various math glyphs depending which maths font package has been loaded.

```
1 \ifpackageloaded{euler}
2   { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool }
3   { \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool }
4 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_setup_maths:
5 {
6   \ifpackageloaded{euler}
7   {
8     \bool_if:NTF \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
9     { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool }
10    { \@@_error:n {euler-too-late} }
11  }
12  {}
13  \ifpackageloaded{lucbmath}{ \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool }{}
14  \ifpackageloaded{lucidabr}{ \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool }{}
15  \ifpackageloaded{lucimatx}{ \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool }{}
```

Knuth's CM fonts are all squashed together, combining letters, accents, text symbols and maths symbols all in the one font, `cmr`, plus other things in other fonts. Because we are changing the roman font in the document, we need to redefine all of the maths glyphs in \TeX 's `operators` maths font to still go back to the legacy `cmr` font for all these random glyphs, unless a separate maths font package has been loaded instead.

In every case, the maths accents are always taken from the `operators` font, which is generally the main text font. (Actually, there is a `\hat` accent in `EulerFraktur`, but it's *ugly*. So I ignore it. Sorry if this causes inconvenience.)

```
16 \DeclareSymbolFont{legacymaths}{OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
17 \SetSymbolFont{legacymaths}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
18 \DeclareMathAccent{\acute}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{19}
19 \DeclareMathAccent{\grave}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{18}
20 \DeclareMathAccent{\ddot}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{127}
21 \DeclareMathAccent{\tilde}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{126}
22 \DeclareMathAccent{\bar}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{22}
23 \DeclareMathAccent{\breve}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{21}
24 \DeclareMathAccent{\check}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{20}
25 \DeclareMathAccent{\hat}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{94} % too bad, euler
```

```

26 \DeclareMathAccent{\dot}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{95}
27 \DeclareMathAccent{\mathring}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{23}

```

`\colon`: what's going on? Okay, so `:` and `\colon` in maths mode are defined in a few places, so I need to work out what does what. Respectively, we have:

```

% % fontmath.ltx:
% \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{"3A}
% \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{"3A}
%
% % amsmath.sty:
% \renewcommand{\colon}{\nobreak\mskip2mu\mathpunct{}\nonscript
% \mkern-\thinmuskip{:}\mskip6mu\plus1mu\relax}
%
% % euler.sty:
% \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{EulerFraktur}{"3A}
%
% % lucbmath.sty:
% \DeclareMathSymbol{@tempb}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
% \ifx\colon@tempb
% \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
% \fi
% \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{58}

```

(3A₁₆ = 58₁₀) So I think, based on this summary, that it is fair to tell fontspec to ‘replace’ the operators font with legacymaths for this symbol, except when amsmath is loaded since we want to keep its definition.

```

28 \group_begin:
29 \mathchardef@tempa="603A \relax
30 \ifx\colon@tempa
31 \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{58}
32 \fi
33 \group_end:

```

The following symbols are only defined specifically in euler, so skip them if that package is loaded.

```

34 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_math_euler_bool
35 {
36 \DeclareMathSymbol{!}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{33}
37 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{58}
38 \DeclareMathSymbol{;}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{59}
39 \DeclareMathSymbol{?}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{63}

```

And these ones are defined both in euler and lucbmath, so we only need to run this code if no extra maths package has been loaded.

```

40 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
41 {
42 \DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`0}
43 \DeclareMathSymbol{1}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`1}
44 \DeclareMathSymbol{2}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`2}

```

```

45 \DeclareMathSymbol{3}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`3}
46 \DeclareMathSymbol{4}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`4}
47 \DeclareMathSymbol{5}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`5}
48 \DeclareMathSymbol{6}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`6}
49 \DeclareMathSymbol{7}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`7}
50 \DeclareMathSymbol{8}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`8}
51 \DeclareMathSymbol{9}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`9}
52 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Gamma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{0}
53 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Delta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{1}
54 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Theta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{2}
55 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Lambda}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{3}
56 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Xi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{4}
57 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Pi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{5}
58 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Sigma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{6}
59 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Upsilon}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{7}
60 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Phi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{8}
61 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Psi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{9}
62 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Omega}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{10}
63 \DeclareMathSymbol{+}{\mathbin}{legacymaths}{43}
64 \DeclareMathSymbol{=}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{61}
65 \DeclareMathDelimiter{()}{\mathopen}{legacymaths}{40}{largesymbols}{0}
66 \DeclareMathDelimiter{)}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{41}{largesymbols}{1}
67 \DeclareMathDelimiter{[ ]}{\mathopen}{legacymaths}{91}{largesymbols}{2}
68 \DeclareMathDelimiter{[ ]}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{93}{largesymbols}{3}
69 \DeclareMathDelimiter{/}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{47}{largesymbols}{14}
70 \DeclareMathSymbol{\mathdollar}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{36}
71 \renewcommand{\hbar}{\mathchar"AF\mkern-9mu h}% TODO: test with other fonts
72 }
73 }

```

Finally, we change the font definitions for `\mathrm` and so on. These are defined using the `\g_@@_mathrm_tl(...)` macros, which default to `\rmdefault` but may be specified with the `\setmathrm(...)` commands in the preamble.

Since \LaTeX only generally defines one level of boldness, we omit `\mathbf` in the bold maths series. It can be specified as per usual with `\setboldmathrm`, which stores the appropriate family name in `\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl`.

```

74 \DeclareSymbolFont{operators}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
75 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
76 \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\mathrm{operators}
77 \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
78 \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
79 \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathsf_tl\mddefault\updefault
80 \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\mddefault\updefault
81 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
82 \tl_if_empty:NTF \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
83 {
84   \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\itdefault
85 }
86 {
87   \SetMathAlphabet\mathrm{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
88   \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault

```

```

89   \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
90   }
91   \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathsf_tl\bfdefault\updefault
92   \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\bfdefault\updefault
93   }

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_setup_maths`:. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths`: We're a little less sophisticated about not executing the maths setup if various other maths font packages are loaded. This list is based on the wonderful 'T_EXFont Catalogue': <http://www.tug.dk/FontCatalogue/mathfonts.html>. I'm sure there are more I've missed. Do the T_EX Gyre fonts have maths support yet?

Untested: would `\unless\ifnum\Gamma=28672\relax\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi` be a better test? This needs more cooperation with euler and lucida, I think.

```

94 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:
95 {
96   \@ifpackageloaded{anttor}
97   {
98     \ifx\define@antt@mathversions a\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
99   }{}
100  \@ifpackageloaded{arevmath}      {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
101  \@ifpackageloaded{eulervm}      {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
102  \@ifpackageloaded{mathdesign}    {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
103  \@ifpackageloaded{concmath}     {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
104  \@ifpackageloaded{cmbright}     {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
105  \@ifpackageloaded{mathesf}      {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
106  \@ifpackageloaded{gfsartemis}   {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
107  \@ifpackageloaded{gfsneohellenic} {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
108  \@ifpackageloaded{iwona}
109  {
110    \ifx\define@iwona@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
111  }{}
112  \@ifpackageloaded{kpfonts}{\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
113  \@ifpackageloaded{kmath}  {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
114  \@ifpackageloaded{kurier}
115  {
116    \ifx\define@kurier@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
117  }{}
118  \@ifpackageloaded{fouriernc}  {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
119  \@ifpackageloaded{fourier}    {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
120  \@ifpackageloaded{lmodern}    {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
121  \@ifpackageloaded{mathpazo}   {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
122  \@ifpackageloaded{mathptmx}   {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
123  \@ifpackageloaded{MinionPro}  {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
124  \@ifpackageloaded{unicode-math} {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
125  \@ifpackageloaded{breqn}      {\bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{\fi}
126  \bool_if:NT \g_@@_math_bool
127  {
128    \@@_info:n {setup-math}
129    \fontspec_setup_maths:
130  }

```

```
131 }  
132 \AtBeginDocument{\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:}
```

(End definition for \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:. This function is documented on page ??.)

File XX

fontspec-code-closing.dtx

1 Closing code

1.1 Finishing up

Now we just want to set up loading the .cfg file, if it exists.

```
1 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_cfg_bool
2   {
3     \InputIfFileExists{fontspec.cfg}
4     {}
5     { \typeout{No~ fontspec.cfg~ file~ found;~ no~ configuration~ loaded.} }
6   }
```

File XXI

fontspec-code-xfss.dtx

1 Changes to the NFSS

1 `<{*fontspec}`

1.1 Italic small caps and so on

`\sishape` These commands for actually selecting italic small caps have been defined for many years;
`\textsi` I'm inclined to drop them. They're probably used very infrequently; I personally prefer just writing `\textit{\textsc{...}}` instead.

```
2 \providecommand*\itscdefault{\itdefault\scdefault}
3 \providecommand*\slscdefault{\sldefault\scdefault}
4 \DeclareRobustCommand{\sishape}
5 {
6   \not@math@alphabet\sishape\relax
7   \fontshape{\itscdefault}\selectfont
8 }
9 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textsi}{\sishape}
```

(End definition for `\sishape` and `\textsi`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

ℒ_{TeX}'s 'shape' font axis needs to be overloaded to support italic small caps and slanted small caps. These are the combinations to support:

```
10 \cs_new:Nn \@@_shape_merge:nn { c_@@_shape_#1_#2_tl }
11 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \itdefault \scdefault } {\itscdefault}
12 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \sldefault \scdefault } {\slscdefault}
13 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \scdefault \itdefault } {\itscdefault}
14 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \scdefault \sldefault } {\slscdefault}
15 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \slscdefault \itdefault } {\itscdefault}
16 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \itscdefault \sldefault } {\slscdefault}
17 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \itscdefault \updefault } {\scdefault}
18 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \slscdefault \updefault } {\scdefault}
```

`\fontspec_merge_shape:n` These macros enable the overload on the `\. .shape` commands. First, a shape 'new+current' (prefix) or 'current+new' (suffix) is tried. If not found, fall back on the 'new' shape.

```
19 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_merge_shape:n
20 {
21   \@@_if_merge_shape:nTF {#1}
22     { \fontshape { \tl_use:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {#1} } } \selectfont }
23     { \fontshape {#1} \selectfont }
24 }
```

The following is rather specific; it only returns true if the merged shape exists, but more importantly also if the merged shape is defined for the current font.

```
25 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_merge_shape:n {TF}
26 {
27   \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
28     { \tl_if_exist_p:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {#1} } }
29     {
```

```

30     \cs_if_exist_p:c
31     {
32         \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/
33         \tl_use:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {#1} }
34     }
35 }
36 \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
37 }

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_merge_shape:n`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\itshape` The original `\.shape` commands are redefined to use the merge shape macro.

```

\scshape 38 \DeclareRobustCommand \itshape
\upshape 39 {
\slshape 40     \not@math@alphabet\itshape\mathit
41     \fontspec_merge_shape:n\itdefault
42 }
43 \DeclareRobustCommand \slshape
44 {
45     \not@math@alphabet\slshape\relax
46     \fontspec_merge_shape:n\sldefault
47 }
48 \DeclareRobustCommand \scshape
49 {
50     \not@math@alphabet\scshape\relax
51     \fontspec_merge_shape:n\scdefault
52 }
53 \DeclareRobustCommand \upshape
54 {
55     \not@math@alphabet\upshape\relax
56     \fontspec_merge_shape:n\updefault
57 }

```

(End definition for `\itshape` and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

1.2 Emphasis

`\emfontdeclare`

```

58 \cs_new_protected:Npn \emfontdeclare #1
59 {
60     \prop_gclear:N \g_@@_em_prop
61     \int_zero:N \l_@@_emdef_int
62     \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
63
64     \tl_if_in:nnT {#1} {\slshape}
65     {
66         \tl_if_in:nnT {#1} {\itshape}
67         {
68             \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
69         }
70     }
71 }

```



```

72 \group_begin:
73 \normalfont
74 \clist_map_inline:nn {\emreset,#1}
75 {
76   ##1
77   \prop_gput_if_new:NxV \g_@@_em_prop { \f@shape } { \l_@@_emdef_int }
78   \prop_gput:Nxn \g_@@_em_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_emdef_int } { ##1 }
79   \int_incr:N \l_@@_emdef_int
80 }
81 \group_end:
82 }

```

(End definition for `\emfontdeclare`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\em`

```

83 \DeclareRobustCommand \em
84 {
85   \@nomath\em
86   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_emshape_query_tl { \f@shape }
87
88   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
89   {
90     \tl_replace_all:Nnn \l_@@_emshape_query_tl {/sl} {/it}
91   }
92
93   <debug> \typeout{Emph~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_em_int}
94   \prop_get:NxNT \g_@@_em_prop { \l_@@_emshape_query_tl } \l_@@_em_tmp_tl
95   {
96     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_em_int { \l_@@_em_tmp_tl }
97   <debug> \typeout{Shape~ (\l_@@_emshape_query_tl)~ detected;~ new~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_em_int}
98   }
99
100   \int_incr:N \l_@@_em_int
101
102   \prop_get:NxNTF \g_@@_em_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_em_int } \l_@@_em_switch_tl
103   { \l_@@_em_switch_tl }
104   {
105     \int_zero:N \l_@@_em_int
106     \emreset
107   }
108
109 }

```

(End definition for `\em`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

\emph
\emshape 110 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\emph}{\em}
\eminnershape 111 \cs_set:Npn \emreset { \upshape }
\emreset 112 \cs_set:Npn \emshape { \itshape }
113 \cs_set:Npn \eminnershape { \upshape }

```

(End definition for `\emph` and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

1.3 Strong emphasis

`\strongfontdeclare`

```

114 \cs_new_protected:Npn \strongfontdeclare #1
115 {
116   \prop_gclear:N \g_@@_strong_prop
117   \int_zero:N \l_@@_strongdef_int
118
119   \group_begin:
120     \normalfont
121     \clist_map_inline:nn {\strongreset,#1}
122     {
123       ##1
124       \prop_gput_if_new:NxV \g_@@_strong_prop { \f@series } { \l_@@_strongdef_int }
125       \prop_gput:Nxn \g_@@_strong_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_strongdef_int } { ##1 }
126       \int_incr:N \l_@@_strongdef_int
127     }
128   \group_end:
129 }
```

(End definition for `\strongfontdeclare`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\strongenv`

```

130 \DeclareRobustCommand \strongenv
131 {
132   \@nomath\strongenv
133
134   <debug> \typeout{Strong~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_strong_int}
135   \prop_get:NxNT \g_@@_strong_prop { \f@series } \l_@@_strong_tmp_tl
136   {
137     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_strong_int { \l_@@_strong_tmp_tl }
138   <debug> \typeout{Series~ (\f@series)~ detected;~ new~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_strong_int}
139   }
140
141   \int_incr:N \l_@@_strong_int
142
143   \prop_get:NxNTF \g_@@_strong_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_strong_int } \l_@@_strong_sw
144   { \l_@@_strong_switch_tl }
145   {
146     \int_zero:N \l_@@_strong_int
147     \strongreset
148   }
149
150 }
```

(End definition for `\strongenv`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\strong`
`\strongreset`

```

151 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\strong}{\strongenv}
152 \cs_set:Npn \strongreset {}
```

(End definition for `\strong` and `\strongreset`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

`\reset@font` Ensure nesting resets when necessary:

```
153 \cs_set:Npn \reset@font
154 {
155   \normalfont
156   \int_zero:N \l_@@_em_int
157   \int_zero:N \l_@@_strong_int
158 }
```

(End definition for \reset@font. This function is documented on page ??.)

Programmer's interface for setting nesting levels:

```
159 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_em_level:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_em_int {#1} }
160 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_strong_level:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_strong_int {#1} }
```

Defaults:

```
161 \strongfontdeclare{ \bfseries }
162 \emfontdeclare{ \emshape, \eminnershape }
163 </fontspec>
```

File XXII

fontspec-code-patches.dtx

1 Patching code

1 `<*fontspec>`

1.1 `\-`

`\-` This macro is courtesy of Frank Mittelbach and the L^AT_EX 2_ε source code.

```
2 \DeclareRobustCommand{\-}{
3   {
4     \discretionary
5       {
6         \char\ifnum\hyphenchar\font<\z@
7           \xlx@defaultthyphenchar
8         \else
9           \hyphenchar\font
10          \fi
11        }{}{}
12      }
13 \def\xlx@defaultthyphenchar{`\-}
```

(End definition for `\-`. This function is documented on page ??.)

1.2 Verbatims

Many thanks to Apostolos Syropoulos for discovering this problem and writing the redefinition of L^AT_EX's `verbatim` environment and `\verb*` command.

`\fontspec_visible_space:` Print U+2423: OPEN BOX, which is used to visibly display a space character.

```
14 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_visible_space:
15 {
16   \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \font {"2423}
17     { \char"2423\scan_stop: }
18     { \fontspec_visible_space_fallback: }
19 }
```

(End definition for `\fontspec_visible_space:`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\fontspec_visible_space_fallback:` If the current font doesn't have U+2423: OPEN BOX, use Latin Modern Mono instead.

```
20 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_visible_space_fallback:
21 {
22   {
23     \usefont{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{lmtt}{\f@series}{\f@shape}
24     \textvisiblespace
25   }
26 }
```

(End definition for `\fontspec_visible_space_fallback:`. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:` Helper macro to turn spaces (~ 20) active and print visible space instead.

```

27 \group_begin:
28 \char_set_catcode_active:n{"20}%
29 \cs_gset:Npn\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:{%
30 \char_set_catcode_active:n{"20}%
31 \cs_set_eq:NN\sim 20\fontspec_visible_space:%
32 }%
33 \group_end:

```

(End definition for `\fontspec_print_visible_spaces`:. This function is documented on page ??.)

`\verb` Redefine `\verb` to use `\fontspec_print_visible_spaces`:.
`\verb*`

```

34 \def\verb
35 {
36   \relax\ifmmode\hbox\else\leavevmode\null\fi
37   \bgroup
38   \verb@eol@error \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
39   \verbatim@font\@noligs
40   \@ifstar\@sverb\@verb
41 }
42 \def\@sverb{\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:\@sverb}

```

(End definition for `\verb` and `\verb`. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

It's better to put small things into `\AtBeginDocument`, so here we go:

```

43 \AtBeginDocument
44 {
45   \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
46   \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
47   \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
48   \fontspec_patch_listings:
49 }

```

`verbatim*` With the `verbatim` package.

```

50 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
51 {
52   \@ifpackageloaded{verbatim}
53   {
54     \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*}
55     {
56       \group_begin: \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
57     }
58   }

```

This is for vanilla \LaTeX .

```

59 {
60   \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*}
61   {
62     \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \sxverbatim
63   }
64 }
65 }

```

listingcont* This is for moreverb. The main listing* environment inherits this definition.

```

66 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
67 {
68   \@ifpackageloaded{moreverb}
69   {
70     \cs_set:cpn {listingcont*}
71     {
72       \cs_set:Npn \verbatim@processline
73       {
74         \thelisting@line \global\advance\listing@line1\relax
75         \the\verbatim@line\par
76       }
77       \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
78     }
79   }{}
80 }

```

listings and fancvrb make things nice and easy:

```

81 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
82 {
83   \@ifpackageloaded{fancyvrb}
84   {
85     \cs_set_eq:NN \FancyVerbSpace \fontspec_visible_space:
86   }{}
87 }
88 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_listings:
89 {
90   \@ifpackageloaded{listings}
91   {
92     \cs_set_eq:NN \lst@visibleSPACE \fontspec_visible_space:
93   }{}
94 }

```

1.3 \oldstylenums

\oldstylenums This command obviously needs a redefinition. And we may as well provide the reverse command.
\liningnums

```

95 \RenewDocumentCommand \oldstylenums {m}
96 {
97   { \addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle} #1 }
98 }
99 \NewDocumentCommand \liningnums {m}
100 {
101   { \addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining} #1 }
102 }

```

(End definition for \oldstylenums and \liningnums. These functions are documented on page ??.)

```

103 </fontspec>

```

Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols	
\#	236, 237, 268
\,	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 17
\-	2, 4, 124, 654
@@ commands:	
\@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnn	507, 514, <u>524</u> , 542
\g_@@_OT_features_prop	9, 11, 68
\@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn	260, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, <u>341</u>
\@@_aff_error:n	11, 316, 357, 389
\l_@@_alias_bool	21, 204, 211, 217, 222, 229, 249
\l_@@_all_features_clist	21, 50, 99, 109, 123, 191, 287
\g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist	1, 44, 206, 224
\g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop	69, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329
\l_@@_arg_clist	56, 247, 248, 249, 252, 255
\l_@@_atsui_bool	7, 10, 220, 360, 369, 615
\l_@@_basename_tl	10, 41, 87, 338
\l_@@_bf_series_seq	42, 123, 135, 138
\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl	69, 70, 82, 87, 88, 89, 119
\@@_calc_scale:n	267, 268, <u>273</u>
\g_@@_cfg_bool	1, 7, 8, 16
\l_@@_check_bool	5, 65, 66, 177, 182, 188, 204
\l_@@_check_feat_bool	27, 55, 57, 58
\@@_check_lang:Nn	112
\@@_check_lang:NnTF	97, <u>112</u> , 308, 330, 337
\@@_check_lang:Nnn	116
\@@_check_lang:NnnTF	110, <u>112</u>
\@@_check_ot_feat:Nn	155
\@@_check_ot_feat:NnTF	50, 60, <u>155</u> , 607
\@@_check_ot_feat:Nnnn	160
\@@_check_ot_feat:NnnnTF	67, <u>155</u>
\@@_check_script:Nn	79
\@@_check_script:NnTF	79, 80, 177, 274, 291
\@@_combo_sc_shape:n	515, 518, 563, 571
\@@_construct_font_call:nn	135, 137, 140, 142, <u>145</u> , 166, 290, 406, 407, 427, 501
\@@_construct_font_call:nnnnnn	145, 154
\l_@@_curr_bfname_tl	89, 133, 143, 146, 148, 180
\l_@@_curr_fontname_tl	88, 332, 333
\g_@@_curr_series_tl	82, 122, 137, 141, 146, 148, 180, 650
\@@_declare_shape:nnnn	417, <u>435</u>
\@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn	447, <u>546</u>
\@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn	446, <u>534</u>
\@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn	444, <u>505</u>
\@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn	445, <u>510</u>
\g_@@_default_fontopts_clist	43, 111, 119
\@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn	2, 3, 4, <u>5</u> , 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 56, 57, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 66, 67, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 183

<pre> \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n 1, 1, 29, 35, 44, 55, 59, 64, 68, 80, 91, 100, 107, 115, 124, 178 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn .. 5, 7, 28, 41, 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 60, 76, 92, 104, 110, 111, 112, 114, 119, 120, 121, 124, 147, 148, 150, 170, 193 \@@_define_opentype_feature_ group:n 1, 6, 27, 40, 59, 75, 91, 103, 113, 123, 149, 169, 187, 188, 196, 214, 227, 249, 258 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 37, 38, 39, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 58, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 99, 100, 101, 102, 109, 122, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195 \@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn 26, 45 \g_@@_defined_shapes_tl 83, 194, 548, 649 \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool . 11, 17, 23, 23, 29, 35, 59, 61, 66, 72, 78, 84 \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool 20, 97, 153 \l_@@_em_int 33, 93, 96, 97, 100, 102, 105, 156, 159 \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool 25, 62, 68, 88 \g_@@_em_prop ... 60, 70, 77, 78, 94, 102 \l_@@_em_switch_tl 102, 103, 112 \l_@@_em_tmp_tl 94, 96, 113 \l_@@_emdef_int 34, 61, 77, 78, 79 \l_@@_emshape_query_tl 86, 90, 94, 97, 111 \@@_error:n 1, 10, 457 \@@_error:nn . 2, 3, 12, 14, 18, 24, 30, 36, 67, 73, 79, 85, 138, 385, 428, 685, 703 \g_@@_euenc_bool 9, 10, 18, 23, 36, 39, 58 \l_@@_ext_filename_tl 85, 86, 89, 90, 90 \l_@@_extension_tl 39, 45, 53, 72, 91, 91, 156 \l_@@_extensions_clist 47, 48, 61, 254 \l_@@_external_bool ... 22, 28, 40, 391 \@@_extract_all_features: 94 \@@_extract_all_features:n ... 20, 94 \l_@@_fake_embolden_tl 127, 533, 536, 550 </pre>	<pre> \l_@@_fake_slant_tl . 126, 528, 555, 558 \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist 49, 105, 106, 112 \g_@@_family_int_prop ... 73, 264, 270 \l_@@_family_label_tl 105, 107, 125, 148, 156 \@@_feat_off:n 37, 42 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn . 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 5, 17 \@@_feat_reset:n 38, 43, 48 \@@_find_autofonts: 278, 298 \l_@@_firsttime_bool 1, 29, 173, 200, 271, 313, 403, 414, 426, 480, 526, 548, 623, 643 \@@_font_is_file: 30, 162, 165 \@@_font_is_name: 162, 644 \l_@@_font_path_tl ... 29, 92, 168, 645 \@@_font_suppress_not_found_ error: 5, 9, 24, 267 \l_@@_fontcfg_bool ... 11, 12, 18, 22, 81 \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist 59, 177, 322, 551 \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist 61, 188, 325, 535, 537, 557, 559 \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist 63, 196, 326 \l_@@_fontfeat_clist 54, 130, 209, 272 \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist 55, 466, 475, 488 \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist 60, 184, 323, 529 \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist . 64, 202, 466 \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist . 62, 192, 324 \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist 58, 173, 208, 321 \g_@@_fontid_family_prop 72, 244, 272 \l_@@_fontid_tl 21, 23, 41, 93, 240, 244, 252 \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl 75, 129, 143, 303, 309, 322, 552 \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl 76, 131, 154, 302, 303, 304, 325, 538, 560 \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl 133, 158, 317, 326 \l_@@_fontname_it_tl 74, 113, 130, 302, 314, 323, 530 \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl 134, 168, 470, 482 \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl 118, 132, 317, 324 \l_@@_fontname_tl .. 94, 152, 154, 158 \l_@@_fontname_up_tl 9, 41, 44, 103, 126, 128, 135, 137, 138, 140, 142 \@@_fontname_wrap:n 45, 147, 148, 164, 168 </pre>
--	---

\l_@@_fontopts_clist	\@@_load_font:
.. 48, 102, 103, 113, 417, 424, 425, 426	26, 132
\g_@@_fontopts_prop	\@@_load_fontname:n . 416, 420, 461, 482
65, 87, 102, 105, 132, 135, 139, 140, 424	\@@_main_DeclareFontExtensions:n
\@@_get_features:Nn .....	..... 106, 252
58, 205	\@@_main_IfFontFeatureActiveTF:nnn
\@@_get_features:n .. 28, 205, 273, 495	..... 110, 257
\l_@@_graphite_bool . 10, 220, 363, 381	\@@_main_addfontfeatures:n 66, 70, 144
\c_@@_hexcol_tl	\@@_main_aliasfontfeature:nn . 90, 201
143, 233, 665	\@@_main_aliasfontfeatureoption:nnn
\l_@@_hexcol_tl .....	..... 94, 220
95, 232, 234, 394, 398, 411, 665	\@@_main_fontspec:nn
\l_@@_hyphenchar_tl	1, 3
..... 116, 377, 378, 380, 383	\@@_main_newAATfeature:nnnn .. 78, 175
\@@_if_autofont:nn	\@@_main_newfontface:nnn . 55, 112
404	\@@_main_newfontfamily:nnnN
\@@_if_autofont:nnTF	43, 47, 51, 99
397	\@@_main_newfontfeature:nn . 74, 168
\@@_if_detect_external:n	\@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn
58	..... 82, 86, 185
\@@_if_detect_external:nTF 12, 58, 165	\@@_main_setboldmathrm:nn . 27, 67
\@@_if_font_feature:n	\@@_main_setmainfont:nn . 7, 8, 39
263	\@@_main_setmathrm:nn
\@@_if_font_feature:nTF	23, 61
261	\@@_main_setmathsf:nn
\@@_if_merge_shape:n	31, 73
25	\@@_main_setmathtt:nn
\@@_if_merge_shape:nTF	35, 79
21, 179	\@@_main_setmonofont:nn
\@@_info:n	18, 43
7, 128, 190, 290	\@@_main_setsansfont:nn
\@@_info:nn	13, 25
8, 399	\@@_make_AAT_feature:nn . 9, 12, 76, 87
\@@_info:nnn	\@@_make_AAT_feature_string:Nnn . 26
9, 281	\@@_make_AAT_feature_string:NnnTF
\@@_init: .....	..... 12, 17, 26, 616
6, 164, 268, 639	\@@_make_OT_feature:nnn
\@@_init_fontface:	32, 50, 75, 203, 210, 222, 233, 255, 264
208, 660	\@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn .. 333, 412
\@@_init_ttc:n	\@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF
17, 70	604
\@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn . 74, 423	\@@_make_smallcaps:TF .. 472, 604, 610
\@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn	\l_@@_mapping_tl
85, 122, 123, 167, 168, 169, 688	..... 22, 23, 26, 139, 229, 230, 438, 442
\@@_iv_str_to_num:w . 697, 698, 700	\g_@@_math_bool
\@@_keys_define_code:nnn	5, 6,
. 7, 13, 16, 20, 24, 36, 37, 46, 79, 84,	17, 98, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105,
89, 96, 101, 105, 116, 120, 125, 152,	106, 107, 110, 112, 113, 116, 118,
156, 160, 171, 175, 182, 186, 190,	119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126
194, 198, 205, 210, 216, 220, 224,	\g_@@_math_euler_bool
228, 232, 236, 240, 244, 263, 311,	9, 13, 34
320, 337, 358, 362, 366, 390, 420,	\g_@@_math_lucida_bool
436, 440, 446, 457, 461, 465, 566, 570	..... 13, 14, 14, 15, 40
\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist	\g_@@_mathrm_tl
..... 52, 124, 127, 128, 129,	63,
210, 211, 215, 216, 219, 221, 225, 226	64, 74, 75, 77, 78, 81, 84, 96, 118, 122
\@@_keys_set_known:nnN	\g_@@_mathsf_tl
.. 67, 122, 127, 129, 209, 211, 347, 415	..... 75, 76, 79, 91, 97, 120, 123
\l_@@_lang_name_tl . 87, 137, 140,	\g_@@_mathtt_tl
180, 182, 185, 186, 195, 197, 200, 201	..... 80, 81, 82, 92, 98, 121, 124
\l_@@_language_int	\l_@@_mm_bool . 9, 362, 373, 473, 478
30,	
45, 168, 174, 180, 294, 311, 323, 332, 339	
\l_@@_leftover_clist . 51, 415, 417	
\@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn	
..... 18, 79, 423	

\@@_msg_new:nnn	13, 18, 23, 44, 84, 90, 94, 104, 108, 112, 117, 121, 126, 131, 136, 142, 146, 153, 157, 161, 165, 170, 174, 179, 184, 188, 196, 200, 204, 208, 212, 217, 222	\@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_-exist:NnTF	16, 30, 380
\@@_msg_new:nnnn	15, 28, 37, 48, 58, 66, 74	\@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn	1, 141
\l_@@_never_check_bool	28, 81, 118, 162, 191, 270	\@@_primitive_font_if_exist:nTF	21, 166
\g_@@_nfss_enc_tl	4, 15, 21, 33, 39, 51, 57, 84, 107, 238, 279, 507, 514, 542, 651	\@@_primitive_font_if_null:NnTF	13, 26, 138, 428
\l_@@_nfss_fam_tl	98, 242, 242, 257	\@@_primitive_font_if_null_p:N	13
\g_@@_nfss_family_tl	41, 85, 161, 190, 246, 257, 258, 271, 272, 279, 285, 286, 287, 288, 293, 294, 295, 296, 507, 514, 542, 543	\@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn	1, 25, 136, 406, 407, 427
\l_@@_nfss_prop	66, 146, 179	\@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn	38, 371, 383
\l_@@_nfss_sc_tl	96, 439, 487, 512, 515, 573	\l_@@_proceed_bool	26, 54, 63, 67
\l_@@_nfss_tl	97, 438, 462, 508, 561	\l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl	140, 145, 343, 348, 353, 668
\l_@@_nfssfont_prop	67, 328, 351	\g_@@_rawfeatures_sclist	57, 146, 276, 291, 496, 502, 627, 636, 662
\l_@@_nobf_bool	2, 26, 129, 132, 300, 307, 553	\@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n	23, 69, 630
\l_@@_noit_bool	3, 27, 109, 112, 300, 312, 531	\l_@@_rmfamily_family_tl	9, 10, 16, 148
\l_@@_nosc_bool	4, 164, 167, 468, 479, 485	\@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn	8, 9, 10, 44, 74, 75, 76, 84, 128
\c_@@_opacity_tl	144, 233, 412, 424, 664	\@@_save_family:nn	33, 275
\l_@@_opacity_tl	99, 232, 234, 412, 417, 424, 429, 664	\@@_save_family_needed:n	236
\l_@@_optical_size_tl	100, 159, 470, 487, 646	\@@_save_family_needed:nTF	31, 236
\l_@@_options_tl	101, 151, 154, 158	\@@_save_fontid_family:nn	252, 262, 274
\l_@@_ot_bool	8, 28, 39, 65, 78, 91, 108, 121, 136, 213, 269, 361, 377, 386, 468, 478, 584, 612, 642	\@@_save_fontinfo:n	277, 283
\@@_ot_compat:nn	350, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370	\l_@@_saved_fontname_tl	102, 440, 453
\@@_ot_validate_tag:n	103, 142, 143, 194, 195, 196, 670	\l_@@_scale_tl	103, 202, 270, 271, 284, 293, 500, 663
\@@_ot_validate_tag:w	673, 676	\l_@@_script_exist_bool	24, 271, 278, 284
\@@_ot_validate_tag_aux:w	679, 680, 682	\l_@@_script_int	29, 42, 94, 123, 125, 130, 169, 173, 180, 277, 293, 295
\g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool	2, 3, 8, 15	\l_@@_script_name_tl	82, 135, 140, 150, 175, 179, 184, 186, 199, 201
\c_@@_postadjust_tl	145, 666	\@@_select_font_family:nn	1, 43, 149, 154, 157, 157
\l_@@_postadjust_tl	142, 360, 370, 382, 508, 515, 543, 574, 577, 666	\@@_set_autofont:Nnn	302, 303, 304, 309, 314, 317, 389
\l_@@_pre_feat_sclist	147, 291, 502, 581	\@@_set_default_features:nn	60, 116
\@@_preparse_features:	25, 118	\@@_set_faces:	280, 319
\l_@@_prev_unicode_name_tl	57, 62	\@@_set_faces_aux:nnnnn	328, 330
\l_@@_primitive_font	25, 26	\@@_set_font_default_features:nnn	61, 121
\@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_-exist:Nn	30	\@@_set_font_dimen:NnN	281, 282, 295
		\@@_set_font_type:N	9, 27, 38, 64, 77, 90, 107, 120, 135, 139, 355
		\@@_set_scriptlang:	27, 170

bool commands:	
\bool_gset_false:N	3, 6, 8, 10, 68, 98, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 112, 113, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125
\bool_gset_true:N	2, 5, 7, 9, 9, 13, 14, 15, 36, 62
\bool_if:NTF	1, 8, 10, 11, 17, 23, 23, 28, 29, 34, 35, 39, 39, 40, 40, 58, 58, 65, 66, 67, 68, 72, 78, 78, 81, 81, 84, 88, 91, 97, 98, 108, 108, 118, 121, 126, 136, 137, 151, 162, 173, 188, 200, 204, 213, 217, 249, 284, 307, 312, 313, 391, 403, 414, 426, 468, 468, 473, 480, 485, 526, 548, 584, 612, 615, 623
\bool_if:nTF	220, 300, 478, 536, 678, 696
\bool_lazy_and:nnTF	27
\bool_new:N	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28
\bool_set_false:N	18, 22, 29, 57, 61, 63, 63, 66, 88, 110, 112, 116, 127, 132, 167, 177, 204, 222, 271, 271, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 531, 553, 642
\bool_set_true:N	12, 26, 27, 28, 54, 55, 59, 65, 66, 92, 109, 129, 131, 153, 164, 182, 191, 211, 229, 269, 270, 278, 366, 369, 373, 377, 381, 386, 479, 643
\bool_until_do:nn	89, 128, 178
\breve	23
C	
\char	5, 6, 17
char commands:	
\char_set_catcode_active:n	28, 30
\char_set_catcode_ignore:n	230
\char_set_catcode_space:n	17
\check	24
clist commands:	
\clist_clear:N	103, 106, 272, 425
\clist_count:N	249
\clist_count:n	100
\clist_gput_right:Nn	118
\clist_gset:Nn	1, 118
\clist_map_break:	54, 66, 280
\clist_map_inline:Nn	48, 61, 206, 224
\clist_map_inline:nn	74, 74, 86, 121, 124, 202, 220, 241, 272, 442, 633
\clist_new:N	43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64
\clist_put_left:Nn	475
\clist_put_right:Nn	208, 529, 535, 537, 551, 557, 559
\clist_set:Nn	46, 99, 109, 173, 177, 184, 188, 192, 196, 202, 207, 212, 247, 254, 346
\clist_set_eq:NN	248, 466
\colon	30, 31, 114
\convertcolorspec	394
cs commands:	
\cs:w	127
\cs_end:	127
\cs_generate_variant:Nn	11, 12, 73, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 153, 274, 449, 533, 675, 693, 720
\cs_gset:Npn	29
\cs_if_eq:NNTF	104, 144, 197
\cs_if_exist:NTF	3, 27, 187, 392
\cs_if_exist_p:N	30
\cs_new:Nn	1, 1, 1, 4, 5, 5, 7, 7, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 15, 19, 20, 25, 37, 38, 38, 39, 43, 44, 45, 50, 61, 67, 67, 70, 73, 74, 76, 79, 79, 94, 94, 99, 112, 116, 118, 121, 132, 144, 145, 146, 152, 154, 159, 160, 162, 166, 168, 170, 175, 185, 196, 201, 205, 220, 252, 257, 262, 268, 273, 275, 283, 295, 298, 305, 319, 330, 335, 341, 350, 355, 389, 412, 420, 435, 450, 491, 505, 510, 518, 524, 534, 546, 604, 605, 610, 620, 630, 660, 689
\cs_new:Npn	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 65, 66, 77, 197, 230
\cs_new_protected:Nn	1, 671
\cs_new_protected:Npn	58, 114
\cs_set:Npn	1, 5, 9, 50, 54, 60, 61, 66, 70, 72, 81, 88, 111, 112, 113, 152, 153, 168, 317, 409, 639, 676, 682, 694, 700
\cs_set_eq:NN	31, 43, 60, 63, 85, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 164, 170
\cs_to_str:N	101, 106, 106, 127, 146, 199
\cs_undefine:N	86, 258, 529
\cyrillicencoding	51, 55, 79
D	
\date	56
\ddot	20

174, 197, 281, 302, 323, 324, 325,
331, 332, 333, 344, 349, 354, 371, 383

font commands:

\l_fontspec_font
..... 17, 41, 60, 136, 138, 139,
141, 143, 158, 177, 274, 282, 291,
308, 330, 337, 380, 427, 428, 607, 616
\l_tmpa_font 406, 408
\l_tmpb_font 407, 408
\fontdimen 79, 79, 297, 323,
324, 325, 331, 332, 333, 344, 349, 354
\fontdimen8 78
\fontencoding 4, 15, 33, 51, 107, 277
\fontfamily 16, 29, 34, 52, 106, 161, 278
\fontname 39, 158, 174, 408
\fontshape 7, 22, 23
\fontspec 1, 25, 31, 41, 125

fontspec commands:

\fontspec_calc_scale:n 77
\fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn .
..... 103, 113,
118, 133, 154, 158, 168, 234, 332, 335
\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl . 31
\g_fontspec_encoding_tl
..... 23, 41, 42, 44,
48, 49, 51, 52, 55, 56, 74, 75, 75, 77,
78, 79, 80, 81, 84, 87, 88, 89, 91, 92, 651
\l_fontspec_family_tl
..... 41, 41, 74, 151, 159
\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl 19, 53
\fontspec_font_if_exist:n 161
\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF 170
\l_fontspec_fontname_tl
..... 8, 18, 21, 41, 44, 46,
77, 102, 114, 119, 124, 126, 129, 134,
139, 144, 149, 202, 210, 290, 304,
309, 314, 321, 423, 424, 427, 432,
437, 440, 493, 501, 530, 538, 552, 560
\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn 5
\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF 5
\fontspec_if_current_feature:n . 171
\fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF
..... 171, 281
\fontspec_if_current_language:n 131
\fontspec_if_current_language:nTF
..... 131
\fontspec_if_current_script:n .. 116
\fontspec_if_current_script:nTF 116
\fontspec_if_feature:n 34
\fontspec_if_feature:nnn 60
\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF 60

\fontspec_if_feature:nTF 34
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font: 1
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF . 1,
7, 25, 36, 62, 75, 88, 105, 118, 133, 147
\fontspec_if_language:n 86
\fontspec_if_language:nn 103
\fontspec_if_language:nnTF 103
\fontspec_if_language:nTF 86
\fontspec_if_opentype: 23
\fontspec_if_opentype:TF 23
\fontspec_if_script:n 73
\fontspec_if_script:nTF 73
\fontspec_if_small_caps: 177
\fontspec_if_small_caps:TF 177
\l_fontspec_lang_tl 48, 138,
157, 296, 310, 322, 333, 340, 589, 600
\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths: 94
\fontspec_merge_shape:n
..... 19, 41, 46, 51, 56
\l_fontspec_mode_tl 70, 74, 81, 596, 653
\fontspec_new_lang:nn 102, 305
\fontspec_new_script:nn 98, 268
\fontspec_parse_colour:niii . 401, 409
\fontspec_parse_cv:w 230, 243
_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w 314, 317
\fontspec_patch_fancyvrb: ... 47, 81
\fontspec_patch_listings: ... 48, 88
\fontspec_patch_moreverb: ... 46, 66
\fontspec_patch_verbatim: ... 45, 50
\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:
..... 27, 42, 56, 62, 77
\l_fontspec_renderer_tl
.. 51, 55, 59, 76, 158, 370, 378, 382, 648
\l_fontspec_script_tl
..... 47, 95, 114, 136,
157, 276, 294, 295, 586, 588, 597, 599
\fontspec_select:nn 43
\fontspec_set_em_level:n 159
\fontspec_set_family:Nnn . 3, 9, 27,
45, 63, 64, 69, 70, 75, 76, 81, 82, 101, 146
\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn 154
\fontspec_set_strong_level:n ... 160
\fontspec_setup_maths: 1, 129
\fontspec_tmp: 60, 63
\fontspec_visible_space: 14, 31, 85, 92
\fontspec_visible_space_fallback:
..... 18, 20

fontspec internal commands:

\l__fontspec_check_bool
.... 88, 92, 98, 108, 127, 131, 137, 151

__fontspec_update_featstr:n	97	\int_to_hex:n	432
\FONTSPECCTX	2	\int_use:N	
\FontspecSetCheckBoolFalse	65	. . . . .	78, 93, 97, 102, 125, 134, 138, 143
\FontspecSetCheckBoolTrue	65	\int_zero:N	61, 87, 105, 117, 126,
fp commands:		. . . . .	146, 156, 157, 176, 323, 655, 656, 657
\fp_eval:n	286	\l_tmpa_int	87, 89, 91, 93, 95, 126, 128,
\fp_new:N	37, 38	. . . . .	130, 132, 134, 176, 178, 181, 183, 185
		\l_tmpb_int	
		. . . . .	86, 89, 93, 124, 128, 132, 170, 178, 183
G		\itdefault	2, 11, 13, 15, 41, 77,
\g	115	. . . . .	84, 89, 323, 325, 538, 539, 543, 555, 557
\Gamma	52	\itscdefault	2, 7, 11, 13, 15, 16, 17, 567, 568
\gdef	2	\itshape	38, 66, 112
\GetFileInfo	55		
\global	7, 74, 158	K	
\grave	19	keys commands:	
group commands:		\l_keys_choice_int	52, 57, 72
\group_begin:	4, 23, 27, 28,	\keys_define:nn	3, 3, 7,
.	56, 72, 119, 149, 163, 266, 275, 414, 527	. . . . .	9, 20, 20, 22, 27, 47, 69, 81, 92, 170,
\group_end:	27, 28, 33, 33, 39,	. . . . .	197, 207, 212, 215, 230, 237, 237,
.	81, 128, 160, 167, 168, 274, 292, 418, 530	. . . . .	244, 250, 259, 267, 270, 304, 307,
		. . . . .	326, 430, 490, 498, 507, 517, 522, 544
		\keys_if_choice_exist:nnnTF	180, 190
H		\keys_if_exist:nnTF	
\hat	25, 113	. . . . .	177, 187, 208, 226, 234, 241
\hbar	71	\l_keys_key_tl	123, 128, 133, 138
\hbox	36	\keys_set:nn	9, 13, 32, 42, 79,
\hyphenchar	6, 9	. . . . .	81, 86, 184, 185, 199, 200, 213, 216,
		. . . . .	221, 226, 231, 238, 245, 316, 345, 452
		\keys_set_groups:nnn	426
I		\keys_set_known:nn	15
\IfBooleanTF	118, 130	\keys_set_known:nnN	70, 80, 150, 455
\ifcase	364	\l_keys_value_tl	123, 128, 133, 138
\IfFontExistsTF	170		
\IfFontFeatureActiveTF	108, 257	L	
\ifmmode	36	\l	31, 50, 53, 63, 64, 65, 70
\IfNoValueTF	59	\Lambda	55
\ifnum	6, 91, 130, 180, 371	\latinencoding	52, 56, 80
\ifx	15, 29, 30, 98, 110, 116, 715, 716	\leavevmode	36
\ignorespaces	4, 9, 14, 19, 62, 166	\let	38
\InputIfFileExists	3	\liningnums	95
int commands:		listingcont*(environment)	66
\int_case:nn	57, 72	\LuaLaTeX	34
\int_case:nnTF	303		
\int_compare:nTF		M	
.	32, 52, 100, 249, 397, 400, 431, 684, 702	\mathalpha	
\int_compare_p:nNn	89, 128, 178	. . . . .	18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27,
\int_eval:n	267	. . . . .	42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51,
\int_if_even:nTF	37	. . . . .	52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62
\int_incr:N	79, 95, 100, 126, 134, 141, 185	\mathbf	56, 78, 88, 115
\int_new:N	29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36	\mathbin	63
\int_set:Nn	11,	\mathchar	71
.	42, 45, 76, 78, 86, 93, 94, 96, 124,		
.	132, 137, 159, 160, 170, 183, 277,		
.	295, 311, 332, 339, 422, 654, 707, 711		

<code>\mathchardef</code>	29	102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108,
<code>\mathclose</code>	36, 39, 66, 68	109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115,
<code>\mathdollar</code>	70	116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122,
<code>\mathit</code>	40, 56, 77, 84, 89	123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129,
<code>\mathopen</code>	65, 67	130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136,
<code>\mathord</code>	69, 70	137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143,
<code>\mathpunct</code>	31, 38	144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150,
<code>\mathrel</code>	37, 64	151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157,
<code>\mathring</code>	27	158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164,
<code>\mathrm</code>	28, 76, 87, 115	165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171,
<code>\mathsf</code>	79, 91	172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178,
<code>\mathtt</code>	80, 92	179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185,
<code>\mddefault</code>	74, 75, 77, 79, 80, 87, 89, 321,	186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192,
	323, 324, 553, 555, 556, 565, 567, 569	193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199,
<code>\mkern</code>	71	200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206,
msg commands:		207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213,
<code>\msg_error:nn</code>	1	214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220,
<code>\msg_error:nnn</code>	2, 3	221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227,
<code>\msg_fatal:nn</code>	21	228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234,
<code>\msg_info:nn</code>	7	235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241,
<code>\msg_info:nnn</code>	8	242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248,
<code>\msg_info:nnnn</code>	9	249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255,
<code>\msg_line_context:</code>	96	256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262,
<code>\msg_new:nnn</code>	11, 14, 15	263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269,
<code>\msg_new:nnnn</code>	12, 16	270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276,
<code>\msg_redirect_module:nnn</code>	13, 14, 18, 19	277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283,
<code>\msg_redirect_name:nnn</code>	451	284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290,
<code>\msg_trace:nn</code>	10	291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297,
<code>\msg_warning:nn</code>	4	298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304,
<code>\msg_warning:nnn</code>	5	305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311,
<code>\msg_warning:nnnn</code>	6	312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318,
		319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325,
		326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332,
		333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339,
		340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346,
		347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353,
		354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360,
		361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367,
		368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374,
		375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382
		<code>\newfontscript</code>
		1,
		2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13,
		14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23,
		24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33,
		34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43,
		44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53,
		54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63,
		64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73,
		74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83,
		84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93,
		94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101,

102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108,
109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115,
116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122,
123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129,
130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136,
137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144
`\newICUfeature` 84
`\newopentypefeature` 80, 185
`\normalfont` 23, 41, 59, 73, 120, 155
`\normalsize` 50, 528
`\null` 36
`\nullfont` 15
`\numexpr` 44

O

`\oldstylenums` 4, 95, 126
`\Omega` 62
`\or` 367, 375, 379

P

`\par` 75
`Path` 24
`\Phi` 60
`\Pi` 57
`\postexhyphenchar` 657
`\posthyphenchar` 655
`\preexhyphenchar` 656
`\prehyphenchar` 654
prg commands:
`\prg_new_conditional:Nnn`
..... 1, 5, 23, 25, 26, 30, 34, 58, 60,
73, 79, 86, 103, 112, 116, 116, 131,
155, 160, 161, 171, 177, 236, 263, 404
`\prg_return_false:`
... 3, 13, 16, 18, 20, 27, 28, 30, 31,
35, 36, 50, 51, 53, 57, 67, 68, 69, 71,
80, 82, 84, 97, 98, 99, 101, 108, 110,
112, 114, 114, 125, 127, 129, 137,
140, 142, 144, 151, 158, 168, 175,
188, 192, 195, 204, 247, 279, 282, 409
`\prg_return_true:`
. 3, 13, 16, 28, 28, 33, 36, 50, 54, 67,
68, 80, 82, 97, 98, 108, 110, 114, 119,
125, 137, 140, 151, 158, 163, 167,
175, 188, 193, 204, 253, 259, 282, 410
`\prg_set_conditional:Nnn` 13, 21
`\ProcessOptions` 22
prop commands:
`\prop_gclear:N` 60, 116
`\prop_get:NnN`
41, 44, 47, 48, 93, 95, 123, 138, 151, 152

`\prop_get:NnNTF` ... 85, 86, 94, 102,
102, 105, 132, 135, 143, 244, 264, 424
`\prop_gput:Nnn` 11, 78,
84, 125, 135, 140, 208, 209, 210, 211,
212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218,
219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225,
226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232,
233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239,
240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246,
247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253,
254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260,
261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267,
268, 269, 270, 270, 271, 272, 272,
273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279,
280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286,
286, 287, 287, 288, 288, 289, 290,
291, 292, 293, 293, 294, 294, 295,
295, 296, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300,
301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307,
308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314,
315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321,
322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329
`\prop_gput_if_new:Nnn` 77, 83, 124
`\prop_gremove:Nn` 139
`\prop_if_in:NnTF` 9, 87
`\prop_map_inline:Nn` 328
`\prop_new:N`
... 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 285
`\prop_put:Nnn` 81, 82, 146, 179, 351
`\providecommand` 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 4, 5, 6
`\ProvidesExplFile` 49
`\ProvidesExplPackage` 44, 45, 46
`\Psi` 61

Q

`\qqquad` 56
quark commands:
`\q_nil`
76, 77, 196, 197, 231, 244, 673, 676,
679, 680, 682, 691, 694, 697, 698, 700
`\q_stop` 314, 317

R

`\relax` ... 5, 6, 29, 36, 44, 45, 50, 55, 74, 371
`\renewcommand` 71
`\RenewDocumentCommand` 47, 95
`\renewfontfamily` 45
`\RequirePackage` 5, 43, 48, 48, 62
`\RequirePackageWithOptions` 7, 12
`\rmdefault` . 10, 20, 29, 45, 96, 115, 122, 278
`\rmfamily` 13, 78, 302

S

scan commands:

- `\scan_stop`: 3, 7, 17, 32, 40, 158
- `\scdefault` 2, 3, 11, 12, 13, 14, 17, 18, 51, 520, 521, 522, 565, 566
- `\scshape` 38
- `\select` 20
- `\selectfont` 5, 7, 17, 22, 23, 35, 53, 108, 161, 279

seq commands:

- `\seq_if_empty:NTF` 135
- `\seq_new:N` 42
- `\seq_put_right:Nn` 123, 138
- `\setboldmathrm` 25, 28, 67, 93, 115
- `\setfontfamily` 49
- `\setmainfont` 6, 7, 25, 28, 113
- `\SetMathAlphabet` 77, 78, 79, 80, 84, 87, 88, 89, 91, 92
- `\setmathrm` 21, 61, 92, 115
- `\setmathsf` 29, 73, 94
- `\setmathtt` 33, 79, 95
- `\setmonofont` 16, 43
- `\setromanfont` 37
- `\setsansfont` 11, 25
- `\SetSymbolFont` 17, 75, 81
- `\settoheight` 300
- `\sfdefault` 28, 38, 46, 97, 123
- `\sffamily` 31
- `\Sigma` 58
- `\sishape` 2
- `\sldefault` 3, 12, 14, 16, 46, 324, 326, 539, 542, 556, 558
- `\slscdefault` .. 3, 12, 14, 15, 16, 18, 569, 570
- `\slshape` 38, 64
- `\space` 34, 39, 44, 202

str commands:

- `\c_backslash_str` 87
- `\c_colon_str` 231, 244
- `\str_case:nn` 78, 551, 563
- `\str_case:nnTF` 199, 265
- `\str_case_e:nnTF` 339
- `\str_if_eq:eeTF` 20, 38, 56, 72, 91, 150, 232, 408, 705
- `\str_if_eq:nnTF` 87, 124, 139, 286, 302, 368, 448
- `\str_if_eq_p:ee` 538, 539
- `\str_if_eq_p:nn` 678, 696
- `\str_lower_case:n` 72, 91
- `\string` 21, 56, 76, 96
- `\strong` 151

- `\strongenv` 130, 151
- `\strongfontdeclare` 114, 161
- `\strongreset` 121, 147, 151
- `\suppressfontnotfounderror` 11

sys commands:

- `\sys_if_engine luatex:TF` 3
- `\sys_if_engine xetex:TF` 10

T

T_EX and L^AT_EX 2_ε commands:

- `\@` 31, 59
- `\@sverb` 40, 42
- `\@filelist` 50
- `\@ifpackageloaded` 1, 6, 13, 14, 15, 52, 68, 83, 90, 96, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 112, 113, 114, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125
- `\@ifstar` 40
- `\@makeother` 38
- `\@noligs` 39
- `\@nomath` 85, 132
- `\@onlypreamble` 92, 93, 94, 95
- `\@sverb` 42
- `\@sxverbatim` 62
- `\@tempa` 29, 30
- `\@verb` 40
- `\@verbatim` 56, 62, 77
- `\add@unicode@accent` 5, 7, 19
- `\color@` 392
- `\curr@fontshape` 105, 145, 198
- `\define@ant@mathversions` 98
- `\define@iwona@mathversions` 110
- `\define@kurier@mathversions` 116
- `\f@encoding` 32, 187, 190, 191
- `\f@family` ... 3, 3, 32, 41, 44, 47, 48, 93, 95, 123, 138, 151, 152, 187, 190, 191
- `\f@series` 23, 32, 124, 135, 138, 187, 190, 191
- `\f@shape` 22, 23, 28, 33, 77, 86, 181
- `\f@size` 105, 137, 142, 145, 198, 406, 407, 427, 529
- `\listing@line` 74
- `\lst@visiblespace` 92
- `\not@math@alphabet` ... 6, 40, 45, 50, 55
- `\reset@font` 153
- `\thelisting@line` 74
- `\two@digits` 222, 234, 235
- `\verb@eol@error` 38
- `\verbatim@font` 39
- `\verbatim@line` 75

<code>\verbatim@processline</code>	72	126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132,	
<code>\verbatim@start</code>	56, 77	133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139,	
<code>\x@defaultthyphenchar</code>	7, 13	140, 141, 142, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150	
<code>\z@</code>	6	<code>\tl_put_left:Nn</code>	46
tex commands:		<code>\tl_put_right:Nn</code> 134, 360, 370, 382, 498	
<code>\tex_hyphenchar:D</code>	40	<code>\tl_remove_all:Nn</code> ...	47, 86, 251, 339
<code>\tex_iffontchar:D</code>	32	<code>\tl_remove_once:Nn</code>	52
<code>\textsc</code>	37	<code>\tl_replace_all:Nnn</code>	90, 92, 338
<code>\textsf</code>	33	<code>\tl_set:Nn</code>	21, 22, 26,
<code>\textsi</code>	2	28, 29, 34, 39, 39, 42, 45, 46, 46, 47,	
<code>\textvisiblespace</code>	24	53, 53, 55, 58, 70, 82, 85, 86, 87, 93,	
<code>\the</code>	75	94, 98, 99, 105, 106, 127, 145, 146,	
<code>\Theta</code>	54	148, 156, 179, 182, 184, 197, 198,	
<code>\tilde</code>	21	199, 214, 218, 230, 242, 250, 266,	
<code>\title</code>	32	269, 270, 271, 276, 284, 293, 294,	
tl commands:		310, 321, 322, 329, 333, 337, 340,	
<code>\c_empty_tl</code>		343, 343, 348, 353, 370, 377, 378,	
.....	59, 679, 680, 697, 698, 715, 716	378, 382, 398, 398, 411, 417, 429,	
<code>\tl_clear:N</code>		438, 442, 470, 487, 528, 550, 581, 653	
.....	23, 45, 107, 133, 246, 256, 438, 439,	<code>\tl_set_eq:NN</code>	10, 21, 28,
.....	452, 645, 646, 647, 648, 663, 667, 668	39, 41, 46, 49, 51, 52, 55, 56, 57, 57,	
<code>\tl_clear_new:N</code>	78, 79, 80, 150	62, 126, 143, 151, 159, 181, 255, 440,	
<code>\tl_const:Nn</code>	11,	453, 530, 538, 552, 560, 664, 665, 666	
.....	12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 143, 144, 145	<code>\tl_to_str:N</code>	21
<code>\tl_count:n</code>	397, 400, 684, 702	<code>\tl_to_str:n</code>	87, 174
<code>\tl_gclear:N</code>	265, 649, 650, 662	<code>\tl_trim_spaces:n</code>	14, 16
<code>\tl_gput_right:Nn</code>	548, 627	<code>\tl_use:N</code>	22, 33, 521
<code>\tl_gremove_all:Nn</code>	636	<code>\tmpa</code>	28, 29
<code>\tl_gset:Nn</code>	41, 42, 44, 59, 74,	token commands:	
.....	96, 97, 98, 122, 122, 123, 124, 137,	<code>\token_to_str:N</code>	87, 392
.....	238, 271, 279, 312, 324, 334, 341, 625	<code>\ttdefault</code>	46, 47, 56, 98, 124
<code>\tl_gset_eq:NN</code>	246, 257, 651	<code>\ttfamily</code>	49
<code>\tl_if_empty:NTF</code>		<code>\typeout</code>	3, 5, 23, 31, 37, 52, 60,
..	29, 46, 50, 82, 175, 180, 195, 213,	69, 71, 83, 93, 96, 97, 120, 123, 134,	
.....	229, 242, 279, 349, 370, 378, 382,	134, 135, 138, 140, 146, 148, 154,	
.....	395, 457, 470, 512, 533, 555, 586, 597	166, 172, 186, 189, 193, 201, 203,	
<code>\tl_if_empty:nTF</code> 7, 14, 18, 57, 88, 89,		207, 210, 215, 219, 225, 228, 236,	
.....	90, 107, 127, 138, 162, 319, 345, 393, 574	239, 240, 243, 251, 254, 259, 260,	
<code>\tl_if_eq:NNTF</code>	189, 412, 424	276, 277, 357, 365, 368, 372, 376,	
<code>\tl_if_eq:nnTF</code>	91, 141	380, 422, 437, 458, 463, 474, 478,	
<code>\tl_if_exist:NTF</code>	520	493, 496, 526, 622, 626, 632, 635, 641	
<code>\tl_if_exist_p:N</code>	28		
<code>\tl_if_in:NnTF</code>	50, 50, 252		
<code>\tl_if_in:nnTF</code>	64, 65, 66, 173		
<code>\tl_if_single:nTF</code>	126, 376		
<code>\tl_new:N</code>	74, 75, 76, 77, 81,		
.....	82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91,		
.....	92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101,		
.....	102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108,		
.....	109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115,		
.....	116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 125,		

U

<code>\UndeclareAccent</code>	64
<code>\UndeclareCommand</code>	64
<code>\UndeclareComposite</code>	82
<code>\UndeclareSymbol</code>	64
<code>\UndeclareTextCommand</code>	68, 74, 80
<code>\unexpanded</code>	96, 123
<code>\UnicodeEncodingName</code>	13,
.....	19, 25, 31, 37, 57, 58, 62, 68, 74, 80, 87

\UnicodeFontFile	1, 47, 49, 51, 53, 55	V	
\UnicodeFontName	2	\verb	<u>34</u> , 125
\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures		\verb*	<u>34</u> , 124
.	3, 4, 47, 49, 51, 53, 55	verbatim* (environment)	<u>50</u>
\updefault	17, 18, 56, 74, 75, 78, 79, 80,		
81, 87, 88, 91, 92, 191, 321, 322, 553, 554		X	
\upshape	<u>38</u> , 111, 113	\XeLaTeX	34
\Upsilon	59	\XeTeXcountvariations	371
\url	40	\XeTeXfeaturename	28
use commands:		\XeTeXfonttype	364
\use:N	99, 106	\XeTeXisexclusivefeature	32
\use:n	11, 29, 47, 102, 155, 164, 228, 455	\XeTeXOTcountfeatures	172
\use_i:nnn	261	\XeTeXOTcountlanguages	125
\use_ii:nnn	261	\XeTeXOTcountscripts	86
\use_iii:nnn	247	\XeTeXOTfeaturetag	180
\use_none:nn	85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91	\XeTeXOTlanguagetag	130
\usefont	23	\XeTeXOTscripttag	91
\UTFencname	49, 78	\XeTeXpicfile	60, 61, 63
		\XeTeXselectorname	34, 39, 44
		\Xi	56